

THE
HISTORY OF INDIA.

BY
HENRY MORRIS;
OF THE MADRAS CIVIL SERVICE.

“Spectemur agendo.” / “Try us by our actions.”

SEVENTH EDITION

Sixty-first Thousand.

MADRAS:

Printed and Published for the Madras School Book Society,
D SOLD AT THE DEPOSITORY, COLLEGE OF FORT SAINT GEORGE,
1870.

[Copyright and Right of Translation reserved.]

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY EUROPEAN SETTLEMENTS IN INDIA.

To A. D. 1744.

Intercourse between India and Europe—Age of maritime adventure—Bartholomew Diaz rounds the Cape of Good Hope—Discovery of America—The first voyage round the Cape to India performed by Vasco de Gama—Cabral's voyage and contest with the Zamorin—Vasco de Gama's second expedition—Early Portuguese settlements—Alphonso Albuquerque captures Goa and other towns—The Portuguese empire in the East—The Dutch trade with India—The English take a part in the same commerce—The East India Company—Contests between the three rival nations—Massacre of Amboyna—The second East India Company—Union of the two Companies—Settlements at Madras—Bombay—Fort St. David—and Calcutta—French settlements in India.....

CHAPTER V.

RISE OF ENGLISH POWER IN INDIA.

FROM A. D. 1744 TO A. D. 1753.

War between England and France—The French in India—Dupleix—The English in India—Sepoy corps—Bourdonnais takes Madras—Siege of Fort St. David—War in Tanjore—Peace in Europe: but the Emperor continued in India—State of affairs in Southern England—Nasir Jung and Mirzapha Jung—Anwar-ud-Daula Chunda Sahib—Struggle for the thrones at Cevebad and Arcot—The French take one side and Civil War the other—M. Bussy—The French victor—Malabut Jung made Nizam—Dupleix' triumph—Character...—Mahomed Ali besieged at Trichinopoly—

*Robert Clive takes Arcot—Gallant defence of that city—
Victory at Arnee—Defeat of Rajah Sahib near Madras
—Lawrence relieves Trichinopoly—Surrender of the
French garrison at Seríngam—Chunda Sahib mur-
dered—Lawrence defeats the French at Bahoor—Clive
takes Covelong and Chingleput—Returns to England...*

CHAPTER VI.

THE BLACK HOLE AND SPEEDY RETRIBUTION.

FROM A. D. 1753 TO A. D. 1757.

*Continuation of the war—Truce between the French and
English—Clive's return—Destruction of Gheriah—
Character and conduct of Surajah Dowlah—Capture
of Calcutta—The Black Hole—Approach of the avenger
—Recapture of Calcutta—Defeat of the Nabob's army
—Conclusion of peace—Capture of Chandernagore—
Conspiracy against the Nabob—Negotiations with
Meer Jaffier—The English engage in the plot—Under-
hand intrigues of Omichund—His avarice and cun-
ning—He is disgracefully outwitted—Advance of the
English towards Moorshedabad—Declaration of war—
Battle of Plassey—The victory—The English reach the
capital—Meer Jaffier is made Nabob—Disappointment
and death of Omichund—Murder of Surajah Dowlah...*

CHAPTER VII.

CONQUEST OF THE CARNATIC, AND

MEER JAFFIER IN BENGAL.

FROM A. D. 1756 TO A. D. 1760.

*Temporary quiet in the Carnatic—Renewal of hostilities
—Troops sent to Tinnevely and Nellore—Relief*

Trichinopoly—Arrival of troops from France—Capture of Fort St. David—Lally's unwise proceedings—French expedition to Tanjore—Siege of Fort St. George—Occurrences after the siege—Arrival of Colonel Coote—Capture of Wandewash and Carangoly—Battle of Wandewash—Siege and capture of Pondicherry—Successes in the Northern Circars—Final triumph over the French—Fate of Lally—Invasion of Bahar by the Shahzada—Siege of Patna—Retreat of the Shahzada—Treachery of the Nabob—Defeat of the Dutch expedition—Clive's second return to England.....

CHAPTER VIII.

CHANGES, WARS, AND TROUBLES IN BENGAL.

FROM A. D. 1760 TO A. D. 1767.

hak Alum invades Bahar again—Defeat of Ramnarrain—Siege of Patna—Battle near Patna—Pursuit of the enemy—Death of Meeran—Return of the troops—Deposition of Meer Jaffier—Meer Cossim—Defeat of the Emperor—Meer Cossim's character—Condition of Bengal—Murder of Ramnarrain—Disputes with the Nabob—The English take Patna—It is retaken by Meer Cossim—Meer Jaffier restored—Battle of Geriah—Capture of Monghir—Meer Cossim's rage—The English advance—Massacre at Patna—The Nabob flees to Oude—The Emperor, Suja Dowlah, and Meer Cossim against the English—They are defeated—Mytiny among the Sepoys—Battle of Buxar—Clive's return—The English receive the sovereignty of Bengal—Reformations in the Civil Service and the army—Clive suppresses a formidable mutiny—Leaves India for the last time—His character....

CHAPTER IX.

THE FIRST WAR WITH HYDER ALI.
FROM A. D. 1766 TO A. D. 1769.

Rise of a new power in Southern India—Kingdom of Mysore—Adventures and progress of Hyder Ali—Hyder Ali usurps the throne of Mysore—Extension of his dominions—Alliance against Hyder with the Mahrattas and the Nizam—Treachery of the Mahrattas—Advance to Mysore—Defection of the Nizam—Colonel Smith's retreat—Battle of Changumma—Battle of Trinomalee—Defeat and repentance of the Nizam—Tippoo's foray at Madras—Gallant defence of Amboor—Captain Colver's spirited message—Defeat of Hyder near Amboor—Hyder retires to the Western Coast—Invasion of Mysore—Capture of forts below the Ghauts—Supersession of Colonel Smith—Hyder's return and partial success—Re-appointment of Colonel Smith—Peace concluded with Hyder..... 99—

CHAPTER X.

CHANGES IN THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA, AND WAR WITH THE MAHRATTAS.

FROM A. D. 1767 TO A. D. 1780.

State of Bengal—Discontent in England—The Company stand forth as Dewan—Peace and good government in Bengal—The Regulating Act—Fends in the Council Chamber—Expulsion of the Polillars—Arrangements regarding Corah and Allahabad—Intelligence of Nizam—His trial and execution—Mr. Hastings gains a majority in the Council—State of affairs at Bombay—Disensions among the Mahrattas—Alliance with Ragob—Interference of the Government of

Pages.	gal—Treaty of Poorundher—Mahrattas prepare war—Operations against the Mahrattas—The march from Bombay—The retreat—Convention of War—Halt of the Bengal Corps—Colonel Goddard's march to Surat—His successes—Capture of Lahar—Form of Gwalior—End of the campaign—Treaty of Ullye.....	9
--------	---	---

CHAPTER XI.

INVASION OF THE CARNATIC.

FROM A. D. 1780 TO A. D. 1784.

der's invasion—Carelessness at Madras—Colonel Baillie's defeat—Retreat of Sir Hector Munro—Panic at Madras—Hastings sends reinforcements—Sir Eyre Coote's arrival from Calcutta—Relief of Wandewash—Repulse at Chillambrum—Battle of Porto Novo—Tyder defeated—Captain Pearse's march from Bengal—Battle of Pollilore—Victory of Sholingur—Relief of Vellore—War with the Dutch—Renewal of the campaign—Proceedings on the Western Coast—Engagement at Paniani—Death of Hyder Ali—Col. Brathwaite's defeat—Inaction of the English general—Siege of Cudallore—Accession of Tippoo—Renewal of war on the Western Coast—Invasion of Mysore from the west—Capitulation of Bednore—Defence of Mangalore—A short truce—Col. Fullarton's march—Treaty of Mangalore.....	10
---	----

CHAPTER XII.

LAST DAYS OF HASTINGS IN BENGAL; AND WAR WITH TIPPOO SULTAN.

FROM A. D. 1781 TO A. D. 1792.

ing supplies for the war—Cheyte Sing—Hastings goes to Benares—The Rajah taken prisoner—Hastings

<i>in danger—Cheyte King defeated—Hastings at Chunai—Leaves India—Various opinions regarding his character—Changes in the Government of India—Mr. Fox's Bill—Mr. Pitt's Bill—Lord Cornwallis—Rumours of war—Tippoo's cruelty towards the Nairs—His war against Travancore—Is repulsed—Invasion of Travancore—War with the English—Marching and counter-marching—Lord Cornwallis arrives at Madras—Bangalore taken—Advance on Seringapatam—Retreat—Operations on the Western Coast—Lord Cornwallis at Bangalore—Nundidroog taken—Second advance on the capital—Siege of Seringapatam—Conclusion of peace—Tippoo's sons surrendered as hostages.....</i>	<i>121—13</i>
--	---------------

CHAPTER XIII.

FALL OF SERINGAPATAM.

FROM A. D. 1792 TO A. D. 1799.

<i>The English assume temporary charge of the Carnatic—Capture of the French settlements—Revenue systems—Sir John Shore—His peace policy—The Mah-rattas attack the Nizam—The English keep aloof—Temporary withdrawal of the Nizam's subsidiary force—Death of Mahomed Ali—Disputed succession in Oude—Lord Mornington's arrival in India—Change of policy—Negotiations with the Nizam—Tippoo prepares for war—Lord Mornington proceeds to Madras—Assembling of the English forces—The Nizam's troops join the army—A short campaign—Advance of the English—Tippoo is beaten at Sedasoor and Malvelly—Siege of Seringapatam—The assault—The triumph—Death of Tippoo—Partition of the conquered country—Restoration of the Rajah—Colonel Wellesley's government of Mysore—Present aspect of Seringapatam.....</i>	<i>133—</i>
---	-------------

CHAPTER XIV.

WAR WITH THE MAHRATTAS.

FROM A. D. 1799 TO A. D. 1803.

Arrangements with the Nizam—The English take possession of the Carnatic—Threatened invasion of Zemaun Shah—Vizier Ali—Insurrection at Benares—Murder of Mr. Cherry—Mr. Davis's gallantry—Arrangements with regard to Oude—Disputes among the Mahrattas—Scindia and Holkar—Treaty of Bassein—War against Scindia and the Rajah of Berar—General Wellesley's advance on Poona—Marches after the enemy—Description of the Mahratta encampment—Battle of Assaye—General Lake's advance—Capture of Alighur—Battle of Delhi—Surrender of French officers—Release of the Emperor Shah Alum—Battle of Laswaree—Suspicious behaviour of Scindia—Battle of Argaum—Capture of Gawilghur—Conclusion of peace.....143-

CHAPTER XV.

ANOTHER WAR WITH THE MAHRATTAS.

FROM A. D. 1804 TO A. D. 1806.

Holkar's suspicious conduct during the war—His insolent message to General Lake—General Lake's army set in motion—Pursuit after Holkar—Return of the English army—Colonel Monson's disastrous retreat—Defence of Delhi—The English army in two divisions pursues Holkar—The cavalry defeat him near Furruckabad—The infantry at Deeg—Favourable operations in the west—Capture of Deeg—Siege of Bhurtpore—Every assault repulsed—Ameer Khan—The Rajah of Bhurtpore yields—Alliance between Holkar and Scindia—Marquis Cornwallis returns to India—His death.

CONTENTS.

George Barlow becomes Governor-General—Fresh treaty with Scindia—Holkar flees to the Punjab—Pursuit after him—A treaty of peace concluded—The English abandon their allies..... 155—

CHAPTER XVI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF SIR GEORGE BARLOW
AND LORD MINTO.

FROM A. D. 1806 TO A. D. 1813.

Profound peace throughout British India—Mutiny at Vellore—Massacre at that station—The cavalry come from Arcot—Suppression of the mutiny—Causes of the disturbance—Treatment of the mutineers—Suppression of the mutiny in other places—Lord Minto becomes Governor-General—Sir George Barlow is appointed Governor of Madras—Departure from the peace policy—Occurrences at Poona and Hyderabad—Embassies to Persia and Cabul—Unpopularity of Sir George Barlow—The Tent Contract—Mutiny of the officers at Madras—Affair at Seringapatam—Return to duty—Restoration of peace and quiet—Expeditions against Java, Bourbon, and the Isle of France—Signs of approaching warfare—Disputes with the Goorkhas—Quarrel with the Burmese—Departure of Lord Minto. 168—176

CHAPTER XVII.

WAR WITH NEPAUL.

FROM A. D. 1813 TO A. D. 1817.

Arrival of the Earl of Moira—The Goorkhas—Attack on a small party on the frontier—Commencement of

The Gorkha war—Arrangements for an invasion of Nepal—Description of the country—Operations of the second division—Siege of Kalunga—Advance on Jylok—Failure of the third and fourth divisions—Success of the first division—Nalagarh abandoned—Temporary cessation of hostilities—Rungtch abandoned—Attack on the heights of Maloun—Capture of Almorah—The Nepaulees ask for peace—Terms of peace—Renewal of war—Sir David Ochterlony turns the Chiringhati Pass—Battle of Makwanpur—Capture of Harinypore—Conclusion of peace—Intrigues among the Mahrattas—The Pindarrees—Description of their warfare—Foray into the Company's territories—Defeat of a Pindarree expedition—Preparations for extensive warfare.....177—1

CHAPTER XVIII.

TWO TREACHEROUS ALLIES.

FROM A. D. 1815 TO A. D. 1817.

Relations with the Peishwa—Intrigues of Trimbakji—Disputes between the Peishwa and the Guicowar—Murder of Gangadhar Shastri—Imprisonment and escape of Trimbakji—He raises insurgent troops—Duplicity of the Peishwa—Firmness of the Resident at Poona—Rewards offered for Trimbakji's capture—New treaty with the Peishwa—The Peishwa's plots—Description of Poona—Attack on the Residency—Battle of Kirkee—Arrival of reinforcements—Flight of the Peishwa—Affairs at Nagpore—Appa Sahib made Regent—Alliance with the English—Appa Sahib becomes Rajah—Plots against his allies—Description of Nagpore—Battle of Seetabuldee—Captain Fitzgerald's charge—Negotiations with the Rajah—

CHAP. I.

verted into ropes; and the timber used for troughs and beams. Teak wood, which abounds in the forests, is useful for building ships; ebony, sandal, and blackwood are often employed in ornamental work; and spices, aromatic gums, and various medicinal plants are found in rich abundance.

Agricultural products.

One of the principal agricultural products of India is rice. In the greater part of the country this production forms the chief article of food of the higher classes only: the lower orders live on wheat or ragi. Of other grains, gram, maize, and millet are chiefly grown; and lately cotton has been extensively cultivated.

Mineral productions.

The minerals of India have been celebrated from the earliest ages, especially its iron, diamonds, and other precious stones.

Commerce of India.

The foreign commerce of India, which probably existed as early as the time of Solomon, king of Israel, consisted chiefly of spices, jewellery, and rich apparel. Indian merchandize was generally conveyed to the west by inland routes until the rise of the Arabs, who, in later times, appropriated to themselves the commerce with the east.

Early civilization of the Hindus.

This extensive trade is an evidence of the high state of civilization attained at an early period by the Hindus. Although we are but slightly acquainted with the ancient history of this people, we know that they once formed the most polished, civilized and prosperous nation in Asia, with the exception of the Jews. They had attained an excellence in

sculpture, architecture, and poetry, far surpassing the acquirements of those by whom they were surrounded, before the most celebrated nations of Europe had come into existence. They remained, however, as they were then. Being isolated for many ages from the rest of mankind by the physical peculiarities of their country and by the exclusiveness of their national character, they maintained no beneficial intercourse with other races, with whom they were distantly connected by commerce alone. A stranger visiting a Hindu village in the times of old would have been struck with the same peculiarities which we notice now. Their mode of life was, in many essential points, similar to what it is at present; and wherever there has been any alteration, it has been for the worse.

We have a picture of Hindu society at an early period in the code of Menu. This collection of laws and maxims is supposed to have been compiled in the ninth century before the Christian era; and was evidently written some time after the Hindus had attained a considerable degree of civilization.

The Hindus were then divided into four castes, the Brahmins, the Kshatriyas, the Veishyas, and the Sudras. The first three were called the twice-born classes, and had particular privileges allowed them: the last appear to have been the descendants of a conquered and an enslaved people. Minute directions are given in the code concerning the mode of life and behaviour of Brahmins, and the conduct of princes and kings.

CHAP. I.

Internal administration.

The Government was monarchical, and the king, assisted by a council and a Brahmin prime minister, was generally the dispenser of justice. The internal administration of affairs was conducted by officers who varied in rank according to their authority, some ruling over a thousand villages, some over a hundred, and some over ten; and each village was under its own headman. The headman of the village was entitled to receive fees in kind from the peasants, and the other officers were compensated by grants of land.

The revenue.

Taxes were levied on agricultural produce, as at the present time, on certain trades, and on merchandize. The highest amount that could be exacted on grain was one-fourth; but the rate of revenue was generally fixed between one-sixth and one-twelfth.

Principal changes since Menu's time.

Various changes have naturally taken place since the time of Menu; but the ascendancy of Brahminical influence and the distinctions of caste still continue in force. The second and third classes are now comparatively rare, and the Sudras are no longer regarded as utterly degraded; but innumerable sub-divisions of caste and a new race of outcasts have since arisen.

The village communities.

The village communities, however, continue to this day. Modifications in the government of villages have taken place in different parts of the country: agreements regarding the revenue are in some places made with each individual, and in others with the headman; but each village constitutes a distinct community within itself. The ruling power, far

beyond the observation of the simple villagers, has often been changed, but each village forms within itself a little world. The people are governed by their own officers, and care little to whom those officers are responsible.

The Hindus inhabit a country of great magnitude, which extends through several degrees of latitude^r and experiences many variations of climate; and they are divided, by geographical position, by their customs, and by language, into several distinct nations, which differ from each other as much as the English differ from the Irish and the Scotch. The character of the people is, therefore, different in different places. The Bengalee is weak and effeminate; the Rajput, brave and manly. The wily Mahratta is a perfect contrast to the Tamil inhabitant of Madras; and the ryots in the Telugu provinces are very unlike those upon the Western Coast. Our estimate of the Hindu character must, consequently, be very general.

The Hindus are polite and gentle in manner, simple in their tastes and habits, and constant in^{tt} the affection which they bear to their family and friends. Their most common failings are timidity, untruthfulness, indolence, and litigiousness. They are brave, when led by men whom they esteem; they are honest, when entrusted with valuable property placed without suspicion in their hands; they are grateful, kind, and affectionate, when kindness and affection are shown to them. They do not, however, appear to live according to any fixed standard of goodness—to act, in a word, from principle.

CHAP. I.

The upper classes are peculiarly cleanly in their habits. Though neither energetic nor enterprising, they are most patient and persevering in all their undertakings, and their application to business is frequently astonishing. There is much in the Hindu character that an Englishman can admire, if only he honestly makes the attempt to discover the points with which he can sympathize, rather than those from which he must differ: and we sincerely trust that the bands of sympathy between the two races may daily be drawn closer.

Ancient history of India.

We know very little regarding the ancient history of the people, for the accounts which we have received of the first Indian sovereigns are so mixed with Hindu fables, and so interwoven with the traditions of the Hindu religion, that it is difficult to distinguish between the narratives of real heroes and of imaginary deities.

Origin of the Hindus.

It is the general opinion that the Hindus are not the original inhabitants of India. They appear to have invaded the country from the north-west; to have settled at first in the extreme north of Hindostan; and afterwards to have penetrated into Southern India. The first kingdom mentioned by Hindu writers is that of Oude, where two dynasties, known as the Races of the Sun and of the Moon, are supposed to have originated. The earliest person, however, who is entitled to be named in history, is Rama. He appears to have been a prince of Oude, who invaded the Deckan, and who so highly distinguished himself by his prowess in war, that he was,

Kingdom of Oude.

Rama.

according to the usual custom of ancient nations, venerated and deified by posterity.

The next recorded event which was probably founded on fact, is the war between the Pandus and Curus, two branches of the royal family, for the throne of Hastinapura near Delhi. The Pandus were victorious; but, grieved at the loss of their friends and relatives in the war, they retired to the solitary regions of the Himalayas, where they died. Krishna, the sovereign of Guzerat, was an ally of the Pandus.

It is supposed that this war took place in the fourteenth century before the Christian era, at which time six independent states existed in the valley of the Ganges, connected, however, with each other by alliance and commercial intercourse.

One of these states was called Magada, and it appears that an unbroken line of kings reigned there from the date of the war which we have just mentioned, to the fifth century of the present era. They possessed great influence over the surrounding kingdoms, and were even allied with nations west of the Indus. The two most celebrated of these kings were Chandragupta, or, as the Greeks called him, Sandracottus, with whom a treaty of alliance was concluded by Seleucus, one of Alexander's successors; and Asoca, in whose reign the kingdom appears to have been widely extended and happily governed.

No authentic information is given regarding the other kingdoms which existed in those times, until the birth of Vikramarka, who reigned at the city of

CHAP. I.

Oojein, in Malwa. Several stories of the justice and the wisdom of this sovereign are related by the Hindus, with whom he is a favourite hero. The era which is named after him, and is generally used in Hindostan Proper, commences B. C. 57. King Bhoja, who flourished at the end of the eleventh century, was also a popular sovereign among the Hindus.

Ancient history of Southern India.
About B. C. 1000.

The history of Southern India is better known than that of Hindostan. It is uncertain at what time the Hindus colonized this part of the country; but it must have been at a comparatively early period. The existence, however, of several languages, which are, in their origin, entirely distinct from Sanscrit, the ancient language of the Hindus, and yet connected with each other, indicate the long occupation of this region by the original inhabitants.

Kingdom of Pandya.
About B. C. 550.

The country was divided into several states. The most remarkable of these were the kingdoms of Pandya and Chola, which flourished in the southern part of the peninsula. The capital of the Pandyan princes, who were frequently at war with the neighbouring kingdom of Chola, was Madura, and their territory comprehended the present districts of Madura and Tinnevely.

Kingdom of Chola.

The capital of Chola was Conjeveram. This kingdom was of great extent, and included the country as far north as the river Godavery.

Smaller states.

There were smaller states between these kingdoms and the Western Coast, in the Teluga and Can-

CHAPTER II.

INDIA UNDER THE EARLY MUSSULMAN DYNASTIES.

FROM B. C. 327 TO A. D. 1556.

Expedition of the Persians—Invasion of the Greeks under Alexander—Seleucus—Kingdom of Bactria—The Mahomedan invasion—Mahmud of Ghazni—His last expedition—Siege of Semnat—Mahomed Ghori—Kutb-ud-dien—The Slave Kings—The house of Khilji—The Toghlok Dynasty—Mahomed Toghlok—Good reign of Feroze Shah—Tamerlane—Sack of Delhi—Anarchy in India—Baber—First battle of Paniput—Baber's character—The Rajputs—Battle of Sikri—Siege of Chanderi—Accession of Humayun—Shir Shah dethrones him—Shir Shah's useful reign—Humayun recovers the throne—His flight into Persia—His return, restoration, and death.

Expedition of
the Persians,

The wealth and importance of India have often attracted the attention of foreign conquerors; and the Hindus have never offered a uniformly successful resistance. Many centuries ago the Persians under Darius invaded and subdued the territories bordering on the Indus; but it does not appear that he advanced further than the Great Desert, which is described by Herodotus, the Greek historian, as the eastern boundary of the world. Tribute was demanded from the small portion of India which the Persians had overrun; but the slight

dependence on that people seems to have been soon forgotten.

Alexander the Great, claiming India as a portion of the Persian Empire, which he had conquered, invaded the Punjab with a large army. He overcame the Indian monarch, Porus, who offered a gallant opposition, and advanced as far as the Hyphasis, or the modern Sutlej after its confluence with the Beas, where his troops rebelled, and refused to follow him any further. Having left a few garrisons in the country, and formed alliances with several of the native princes, he returned to Assyria through Scinde and Beloochistan.

Seleneus, who obtained a portion of Alexander's empire after the death of the conqueror, formed with Chandragupta, or Sandracottus, king of Magada, a treaty which appears to have been favourable to the Indian prince.

The kingdom of Bactria, or the modern country of Bokhara, to the north of Cabul, which was a part of the dominions of Seleucus, became in course of time independent, and was governed by a dynasty of vigorous and enlightened kings. Under those sovereigns the Bactrians invaded and conquered a larger portion of India than Darius or Alexander had visited; but, although their power in India lasted for more than a century, they left no permanent impression upon the inhabitants of the land.

But in later days enemies of a far different character invaded Hindostan. These were the followers of the Mahomedan religion: they thoroughly con-

CHAP. II. quered the greater part of the country, and founded
 A. D. 1001. in it a monarchy which continued in full power for
 several generations.

Mahmud of
 Ghazni.

The first celebrated chief of that creed who invaded India was named Mahmud. He came from Ghazni, which is situated to the north-west of India, in the mountainous country beyond the Punjab. Finding himself at peace in his native land, after a long and arduous struggle for the throne, he began to look abroad for further employment for his own restless spirit, and for the many warlike men by whom he was surrounded.

His expedi-
 tions into India.

India seemed to promise the best field for acquiring booty; and, therefore, inviting to his standard those who were eager for adventure and for war, he entered the country with a considerable force. He made twelve expeditions into the neighbouring kingdoms of Hindostan, and, after each, returned to Ghazni with an enormous amount of plunder and wealth.

Siege of Somnat.
 A. D. 1024.

The last expedition nearly proved fatal to him and to his army. He had advanced to Somnat in the south of Guzerat, where there was a fine, rich, old temple. It was strongly fortified, and defended by a large and courageous garrison, who, for a long time, resisted the assaults of the Mussulmans. Roused by this attack upon their favourite pagoda, the neighbouring rajahs gathered round Mahmud's army, and he was obliged to raise the siege to meet this new foe. The battle raged long and fiercely. The excited Hindus fought nobly; and the enemy

was giving way before them, when Mahmud leaped from his horse, fell upon his knees in sight of his soldiers, prayed aloud for victory, and then, remounting his charger, led them on once more. He was successful. The Hindus fled: and the garrison of Somnat, in desperation, left their stronghold, forced a way through their opponents, and departed from the coast in boats. When the conqueror entered the temple, he struck the largest of the idols down with his own hands, and spoiled the pagoda of all its treasures.

Before returning to his own country, Mahmud remained some time in Guzerat, and appointed a rajah over the people of that province. Proceeding on his march, he found that the road by which he had entered India was occupied by a large force under the Rajah of Ajmir, and he consequently resolved to turn aside, and to try a new route along the sands to the east of Scinde. The march was awful. Thousands were killed by fatigue and thirst and heat, and his army was almost entirely destroyed.

It is unnecessary to mention Mahmud's successors, as the account of them has little connection with the history of India. The last of the line was overthrown by Mahomed Shahab-ud-dien, or, as he is usually called, Mahomed Ghori, the most illustrious of the house of Ghor, and the founder of the Mahomedan dynasties in this land, who received his name from a district of the Hindu Koosh near Turkestan. He extended his conquests towards Delhi and Ajmir, which were finally subdued by his

CHAP. II. general, Kutb-ud-dien, who also reduced the provinces of Bengal and Bahar. Kutb-ud-dien was originally a slave of Mahomed's, who, having no son, brought him up with the greatest care, and promoted him to the highest offices in the state. After Mahomed's death, Kutb-ud-dien and two other slaves became independent, and succeeded to power in different parts of the kingdom. The former ruled at Delhi.

The Slave Kings; and the House of Khilji.
A. D. 1206 to 1288.
Kutb-ud-dien.
D. 1288 to 1321.

Kutb-ud-dien and his successors are known by the name of the Slave Kings. After them followed the House of Khilji, and during the reigns of these kings, the Mahomedans extended their conquests towards the south of India.

Mahomed Toghlak.
A. D. 1325 to 1351.

The family of Toghlak were the next rulers of Delhi. The second sovereign of this line named Mahomed Toghlak, was a madman. He desired to change his capital from Delhi to Deoghur, a city in the Deckan, to which he gave the name of Doulatabad; and he ordered all the inhabitants of the former place to leave their abodes, and to follow him towards the south. He attempted to invade China, and sent an army of 100,000 men over the Himalayas for that purpose; but they were speedily defeated, and so great were their sufferings on the homeward march, that scarcely a man returned. He actually hunted his subjects for amusement, enclosing a large circle of country with his troops, and ordering every poor peasant within the space thus enclosed to be killed; because he had driven some of them into rebellion by his tyranny; and this contemptible sovereign, who could value life

so low, having one day lost a tooth, buried it with royal pomp, and built over it a splendid tomb !

His successor was a better man, and, perhaps, appeared still better than he was, by coming after such a monster. Feroze Shah has left behind him the noblest name of all the early Mahomedan kings. He attended to the good of his people ; built hospitals, and bridges, and tanks ; and constructed the first canal ever known in India, which, after his reign, became useless, but has since been restored once by Akber, and in later times by the English. He died at the age of ninety.

Ten years later, during the reign of one of Feroze Shah's grandsons, Tamerlane or Timur, a cruel savage barbarian, invaded India. He found the country an easy prey. On his march to Delhi, he committed the most horrible excesses, and burning villages and smoking houses marked his road. His march being, on one occasion, impeded by the multitude of prisoners whom he had taken, it is said that he inhumanly ordered a hundred thousand of them to be murdered, sparing only those under fifteen years of age. He took possession of Delhi which had surrendered on his promise of protection. But awful cruelties ensued. Tamerlane's followers began, according to their usual custom to plunder, and when the inhabitants resisted, a general massacre took place : the streets were strewn with the dead, and the city was filled with lamentation, and mourning, and woe.

After proclaiming himself Emperor of Delhi Tamerlane returned to his own country with an

CHAP. II.
A. D. 1593. enormous amount of treasure and innumerable slaves, leaving the provinces which he had overrun desolate and deserted. For many years after this invasion there was anarchy in India. The Empire was thoroughly disorganized. Everywhere independent kings arose; party fought against party; and, although there was an Emperor in name, his power extended over only a very small part of the former Mahomedan dominions. It was not until Baber, the sixth in descent from Tamerlane, invaded India, as his ancestor had done, and re-conquered Delhi, that peace and quietness were, in a measure, restored. This monarch was not bent like Tamerlane on plunder only; but he came to found a new kingdom in the land of the Hindu.

Invasion of
Baber.

A. D. 1524.

Ibrahim Lodi was, at that time, the nominal Emperor, and in his reign several rebellions occurred, during one of which the Governor of the Punjab applied for assistance to Baber, who gladly came to his aid. After several actions in the north west, Baber advanced towards Delhi, where Ibrahim came out to meet him with a large army. A battle was fought at Paniput. Baber's force was the smaller; but neither party seemed inclined to risk an engagement, and both commanders entrenched themselves in their camps. Ibrahim came out to the attack first: he was himself slain, and his army totally defeated. By this battle the throne of Delhi passed into the possession of Tamerlane's descendants, who formed the line of kings generally known by the name of the Great Moguls.

Battle of Paniput.

April 21st, 1526.

Baber, the new conqueror, was a man of a jovial and sociable disposition. He wrote a pleasing memoir of his life, in which he affords us an open and candid estimate of his character. He does not hide his faults; but, notwithstanding that, he reveals a love for the good and beautiful and true, which will endear him to the hearts of his readers in every age and land.

Baber reigned at Delhi for only five years, during which his time was fully employed in bringing into subjection those who still resisted his authority. The Mussulman rulers were soon conquered; but the Hindus were not so easily subdued.

We have already related how Mahmud of Ghazni and other Mussulman sovereigns frequently met with stubborn resistance from the inhabitants of India: and, now that we have come to the beginning of the Mogul dynasty, it is right that we should mention those from whom that resistance was principally received. The north-western provinces of India were inhabited by the Rajputs, a warlike race who belonged to the second of the four great classes into which the Hindus were divided. They were a brave and free people. They were never thoroughly subdued by the Mussulmans, and it was only owing to the kind treatment which they experienced from some of the Emperors of Delhi that they ever submitted to the rule of the Moguls.

Such were the men against whom Baber had now to contend. A number of Rajputs, under Sanga,

CHAP. II. Rajah of Mewar, advanced towards Agra to attack
 A. D. 1527. him. A desperate battle took place. Part of Ba-
 Battle of Sikri. ber's army was at first beaten; but the Rajputs
 March 18th. did not take advantage of their success, and gave
 him time to fortify his camp, and prevent their at-
 tacking him again. His soldiers were disheartened
 by their first defeat, and it appeared likely that the
 Rajputs would gain the victory. But Baber did
 not despair. Collecting his principal officers around
 him, he prayed them not to desert his cause nor to
 despond, and spake to them of glory and honour;
 and all present swore to be true to him—to con-
 quer, or to die. Baber then led his army again to
 battle, and the revived spirit of the Mussulmans
 was so good that they speedily drove the enemy
 from the field.

Siege of Chan-
 dery
 Jan. 26th, 1528.

During the remainder of his reign, Baber had
 much trouble with the Rajputs. Once, while he was
 besieging the fort of Chandery in Malwa, a despe-
 rate scene took place. The Rajputs, having put
 their women and children to death, fought until
 every one of their number was slain.

Death of Baber.
 Dec. 26th, 1530.

He also experienced opposition with his own
 people in Oude and Bahar: but, at the time of his
 death, the former Mussulman empire was almost
 entirely under his control. His death is thought
 to have been brought on by his superstitiously
 invoking it upon himself, to save the life of his
 favourite son, Humayun. It is true that he per-
 formed a ceremony for that purpose; and he most
 likely died from the effect which it produced upon
 his mind.

The condition of Baber's family at the time of his death, was far from prosperous. His dominions were divided between his two elder sons; Camran receiving the countries of Cabul, Candahar, and the Punjab; and Humayun, the eldest, succeeding to the title of Emperor. By this arrangement the latter was prevented from obtaining men from the lands beyond the Indus to recruit his army, as his father had done.

At the beginning of Humayun's reign, many disturbances occurred, and he was unable to repress them with promptness and decision. His most formidable opponent was Shir Shah. This remarkable man was a Patan, who, having raised himself by his great bravery and still greater skill to a high position in Bahar, had attained such power that he was able to oppose his sovereign, and to drive him from the throne.

When in Humayun's place, Shir Shah exerted himself for the improvement of the country and for the good of the people: and, although he was Emperor for only five years, he did more for both objects in that short time than any of his predecessors had done. He improved the existing system of collecting revenue; rendered the administration of justice easier and smoother than it had previously been; constructed numerous public works of great utility; and his subjects felt sincere regret when death put an end to his short but useful reign. He was killed during the siege of Kalinjer, a Rajput town in Bundelcund.

CHAP. II.

Shir Shah was succeeded by his eldest son; but

A. D. 1555.

Humayun recovers the kingdom.

his family governed badly, and, when Humayun afterwards made an attempt to recover the kingdom, he found so many divisions in the country, so feeble a discipline in the army, and so much corruption in the court, that he had little difficulty in accomplishing his object.

Humayun's retreat from India.

Meanwhile Humayun had suffered much. After

his defeat by Shir Shah, he fled to Persia, and on their way thither, he and his followers suffered severely from the fatigue and hardships of the journey. During this eventful march, when his father was a wanderer and an exile, Prince Akber, the future sovereign of India, was born.

Oct. 14th, 1542.

He is assisted by the King of Persia.

When the exiled Emperor reached the court of the King of Persia, he pleased the latter so much by a change in his religious opinions, that a considerable army was placed at his disposal, with which he succeeded in driving his brother Camran out of Cabul and Candahar, and in finally recovering his former kingdom from the family of Shir Shah. He died, however, a year after his restoration, from the effects of an accidental fall, and was succeeded by his illustrious son.

Jan. 1556.

CHAPTER III.

THE GREAT MOGULS.

FROM A. D. 1556 TO A. D. 1744.

Akber—The Prime Minister, Behram—Akber's long and noble reign—His useful measures—Jehangir—Nur Jehan—Rebellions at the close of the reign—Accession of Shah Jehan—His treatment of his sons—Their characters—The Emperor's illness—Contention between his sons—Aurangzib and Morad fight against Dara—Dara's defeat—Aurangzib proclaims himself Emperor—Shah Jehan's death—Battle between Aurangzib and Shuja—The Mah-rattas—Their mode of warfare—Sevaji—An example of his treachery and cunning—Rapid rise of Sevaji—Aurangzib's wars in the Deccan—His impolitic treatment of the Rajputs—Aurangzib's death—Decay of the Empire—Invasion by Nadir Shah—Massacre at Delhi—Dissolution of the Mogul Empire—Rise of the English power in India—State of India under the Mahomedans.

PRINCE AKBER ascended the throne with bright prospects before him. He was very young when his father died, and the kingdom was consequently placed in charge of the chief minister, Behram, who governed it with the greatest care and ability. Under this intelligent but arbitrary statesman, the country was almost completely brought into sub-

CHAP. III. jection: and, when Akber himself took charge of
A. D. 1556. the government, on attaining his majority, he found

Akber's long
and noble reign.

it in a tolerably quiet and peaceful condition. Akber's reign was a long and useful one. He was the best Mussulman king that ever ruled in India, because he was the most thoughtful of the happiness and welfare of his subjects. It can be said in his praise, that at no time while the Mahomedans were in power, was the country so peaceful or so well governed, and at no time were all classes so happy. One of his first objects was to bring together the different races under his command; to teach them how to work with each other, and thus to increase the strength of the kingdom without obtaining men from the neighbouring countries, from which the armies of Hindostan had been hitherto recruited. He employed the Hindus in high offices of state: he abolished several unjust taxes which had been imposed upon them; he improved Shih Shah's system of revenue; he strengthened the administration of justice; he forbade all cruel and inhuman punishments: he exerted himself to suppress the custom of suttee: in short, he did every thing in his power to make his people happy and prosperous. If there is one spot in the long line of the Mahomedan rulers on which we can look with delight, it is the reign of Akber.

Accession of
Jehangir.
Oct. 15, 1605.

He was succeeded by his son Solim, who assumed the title of Jehangir, or 'The Conqueror of the World.' He was a slothful and careless king; but his dominions had been brought into such admirable order by his father, that he enjoyed peace and quietness during the greater part of his reign.

The most interesting event of Jehangir's reign was his love for a beautiful and accomplished lady named Nur Jehan. During his father's life-time, Prince Selim had become attached to her; but, as Akber disapproved of his marrying her, she was given to a nobleman of high rank. After he became Emperor, however, he resolved to have his own way, caused her husband to be put to death; and made her an inmate of his harem. But his love for her abated; and he suffered her to remain in retirement without showing her either kindness or attention. She succeeded, however, in regaining his affection. He afterwards married her, gave her the title of Empress, and was greatly influenced by her during the remainder of his life.

The last years of Jehangir were disturbed by rebellions, caused by the misconduct of one of his sons, and by Nur Jehan's love of power. In one of these insurrections he was taken prisoner by a nobleman named Mohabat Khan, who had been driven into rebellion by the Empress's ill-treatment. Jehangir died soon after his rescue, and was succeeded by Shah Jehan, the son who had rebelled against him, and whom he desired to be excluded from the throne.

During the reign of Shah Jehan there were wars in the Deckan and Cabul; but that which distinguished it more than wars or tumults, was the manner in which he treated his sons. It had always been the custom for the Emperors of Delhi carefully to abstain from bestowing any high office in the state upon a member of the royal family. Shah

CHAP. III. Jehan was the first to alter this custom, and the
 A. D. 1627. innovation ultimately proved fatal to himself. He
 treated his sons with the greatest confidence; placed
 them in responsible situations; and gave them the
 command of his armies. Their names were Dara,
 Shuja, Morad, and Aurangzib. They were all of
 very different characters. Dara was high-spirited,
 and passionate; Shuja was sensual; Morad, the
 youngest, stupid and self-willed; and Aurangzib,
 crafty, cautious, scheming, and ambitious.

Dissemination of Aurangzib. In 1657, Shah Jehan was taken alarmingly ill,
 and, being unable to carry on the government, he
 entrusted it to the charge of his eldest son, Dara.

His other sons immediately commenced a contest
 for the crown, and declared war against their elder
 brother. Shuja, who was in Bengal, was the first to
 advance: but, during the preparation for war, Shah
 Jehan recovered, and Dara restored to him the
 supreme authority and power. Shuja, however,
 pretended to disbelieve the report of this change
 when he heard it; advanced towards Delhi with his
 army; and was defeated by Soliman, Dara's son.

Dissemination
 of Aurangzib.

Meanwhile Aurangzib and Morad, the former
 of whom was in the Deekan, and the latter in
 Guzerat, were not idle. Aurangzib pretended that
 he did not wish to be Emperor, that he desired to
 spend the remainder of his life in the services of
 religion, and that he would disinterestedly help
 Morad against his other brothers, who were; he
 affirmed, incapable of carrying on the government
 efficiently.

Prince Morad, believing these professions, advanced to join his army. A Rajput chief named Jeswunt Sing had been sent by Dara to oppose Aurangzib; but he purposely waited until Morad had arrived, so that he might triumph over both princes at once. He was, however, signally defeated.

The two brothers then marched against Dara, who felt so certain of success that he refused to wait until his son Soliman could come to his assistance. A fierce battle took place. The princes were in the thickest of the fight; and Morad's howdah was covered with arrows and darts. An accident gave the victory to the rebel brothers. Dara, from some unknown cause, dismounted from the elephant on which he had been seated during the greater part of the engagement, and his troops, seeing the empty howdah, imagined that their leader was killed, and immediately fled in terror. While still on the field of battle, Aurangzib, covered with dust and blood, went up to Morad, and wished him joy of the victory and the throne.

On their arrival at Agra, they took their father, Shah Jehan, prisoner. It was now time for Aurangzib to put away deceit. He, therefore, publicly proclaimed himself Emperor, threw his brother Morad into prison, and assumed charge of the government.

But he had still to contend with his other brother, Shuja, who was advancing against him with a large army. Another severe battle ensued, which was lost by the perfidy of the Rajput, Jes-

CHAP. III. whom he had admitted into his favour, and who now
 A. D. 1659. treacherously attacked the rear-guard of his force.
 But victory was on his side. While their troops
 were fighting around them, Aurangzib and Shuja
 fought with each other on their elephants. One of
 Shuja's officers, rushing before his leader, made his
 elephant run against Aurangzib's, and brought it
 down upon its knees. Aurangzib was just about to
 descend from it, when an attendant prevented him,
 saying, "Stop—you descend from the throne." The
 Emperor remained, and was saved. But what
 Aurangzib was withheld from doing Shuja did, and
 by that means lost the battle. Shuja for some time
 continued to give trouble to the new Emperor; but
 he was at length compelled to flee, and was put to
 death by a Rajah with whom he had taken refuge.
 For a short time he had been assisted by Mahomed,
 Aurangzib's son, who had deserted his father's
 cause for the sake of Shuja's daughter, to whom
 he had become attached; but the young prince was
 defeated by the Emperor, and imprisoned for life.

Fate of Dara. Dara also fell into his brother's power. He tried
 to escape, but he was seized by a treacherous chief
 to whom he had twice done a kindness, and was
 delivered into the power of Aurangzib. He was
 imprisoned for a short time, and then murdered.

Death of Shah
 Jehan. A few years afterwards, the deposed Shah Jehan
 Dec. 1666. died, and Aurangzib was left, with no one to oppose
 him, as the master of the large Empire of Delhi.

Rise of the Mah-
 rattas. But a new nation had arisen in the Deckan. The
 Mahrattas, tribes of rude mountaineers, principally

living in the country about Bombay, were now being united into a powerful state by a great chief who had lately arisen among them. Year by year they gained greater power; they kept Aurangzib in a state of constant warfare during the remainder of his reign; and, as they increased in strength, it seemed highly probable that they would rescue India from the Mahomedans, and restore the government to Hindu kings and princes.

Their mode of warfare was very different from that of the Moguls. Their armies were chiefly composed of light and active horsemen; they seldom waited to fight a battle, but rode rapidly from place to place, plundering as they went; if attacked, they would separate and flee, only to unite again, and fall upon small detached parties and the baggage-guards of the enemy, when scattered in pursuit. They were, in fact, more like several bands of robbers, united under the same leader and actuated by the same motive, than the army of a warlike and powerful nation.

The name of the chief whom we have mentioned was Sevaji. He rose to eminence first by small acts of robbery; and then by greater. He gradually collected a band of hardy men around him; day by day he increased in power; and taking, one after another, the hill forts of his native country, he at length became master of a considerable territory; and an object of danger to Aurangzib.

The government of the neighbouring kingdom of Bejapore attempted to subdue him, and to arrest his

CHAP. III.

A. D. 1662.

An example of
his treachery
and cunning.

rising power; but he conquered the army which was sent against him in the following way. He pretended to be in a state of great alarm; and proposed a truce to its commander, requesting a private meeting, to which each party should come without arms and with only one attendant. This proposition was agreed to. The general came to the interview unarmed: but Sevaji had concealed a suit of light chain armour and a helmet under his turban and long white robe, a small weapon formed like the claw of a beast being in his left hand, and a dagger up his right sleeve. As the Mussulman drew near, the Mahratta pretended to be frightened, and when the former advanced to embrace him, he put his armed fingers into his body, and stabbed him with his dagger. His troops then attacked the unsuspecting forces of his fallen adversary, and gained an easy victory over them.

apid rise of
Sevaji.

A. D. 1664.

By similar treachery and cunning, Sevaji extended his dominion; his armies rapidly increased; and he led them throughout Southern India in search of plunder and employment. In 1664 he assumed the sovereignty, and ten years later was crowned, with great splendour, as Rajah of the Mahrattas.

June 6th, 1674.

Aurangzib's
wars in the Dec-
kan.

After the death of Sevaji, the Mahratta power was supported by his son and successors; and, during the rest of his reign, Aurangzib was engaged in warfare against this new enemy. The Emperor's army was also employed against the Kings of Bejapore and Golconda, the latter of whom gallantly defended his capital during a siege of seven months.

On the Mahrattas, however, Aurangzib could make no impression. He remained for years in the Deckan engaged in constant warfare against them; but as soon as they were beaten on one side, they arose on another, and his large army could not move after them with sufficient rapidity.

There were also troubles in other parts of the Empire. Aurangzib was a zealous Mahomedan, and was anxiously desirous of propagating the creed in which he believed; but the mode of conversion which that religion enjoins is not calculated to win the affection of others. All the Emperors of Delhi, from Akber downwards, had treated the Rajputs with kindness and consideration; but Aurangzib, in his zeal for his religion, began to persecute them, to insist on their becoming Mahomedans, or to pay a capitation tax from which Akber had wisely exempted them. The Rajputs, irritated by this unwise and unjust treatment, rebelled against their oppressor. They were not restored to obedience during his life-time; and they refused to assist his successors in times of trouble and war, and thus accelerated the downfall of the Empire.

In the midst of warfare and turbulence, Aurangzib died. The Empire had begun to decline in his reign; but it rapidly decreased in power after his death, for his successors were feeble and unskillful monarchs, who wanted both the ability and the power to keep their large kingdom in subjection. Its destruction was hastened by an invasion of Nadir Shah, King of Persia, which, in 1739, was a total and savage

CHAP. III. cruelties, greatly resembled the expedition of
A. D. 1738. Tamerlane.

Invasion of
Nadir Shah.
Nov.

Annoyed with the reigning Emperor for not delivering into his power some Affghans who had sought refuge near Ghazni, he invaded India, conquered the army which had been sent to oppose him, and captured the city of Delhi. For two days after he had taken possession of the town, tranquillity prevailed; but, a report being spread on the third night that Nadir Shah was dead, the inhabitants rose against the conquerors. Murder and violence ensued; and in the morning Nadir Shah was observed riding through the scene of destruction, and giving orders that the inhabitants of every street where the dead body of a Persian was found should be put to death. About thirty thousand were killed; and after this terrible slaughter, the conqueror withdrew, laden with treasure and satiated with blood.

Feb. 1739, 1739.

Massacre at
Delhi.

March, 1739.

Dissolution of
the Mogal Em-
pire.

After this invasion the Empire was completely disorganized. The Deckan was under a governor called the Nizam, who threw off all obedience; Bengal was taken by another; Oude was seized by a third; the Sikhs, a new nation, which had arisen at the beginning of the 16th century, exercised authority in the Panjab; and the Mahrattas continued to increase in power, and though their Rajah was weak and powerless, and kept a prisoner at his own court, the principal officers of state—the Peishwa, or the prime minister, at Poona, and the commander-in-chief at Nagpore—kept up the strength of this warlike nation.

But at this juncture another power arose, which was to conquer and rule all, whether Mahrattas, Mussulmans, or Sikhs. During the 17th century, a few traders from an island in the far West, settled here and there in India. At first they attended only to the merchandise about which they had come; but they were, at length, obliged, by stern necessity, to take the sword into their hands, and gradually they acquired dominion, and province after province fell into their possession, until, in the end, all the land was theirs.

We have now related the principal events of Mahomedan sovereignty in this country. To some periods we cannot look back without a shudder of horror: at other times the monarchs were wealthy, and the nation prosperous: but the people were never really cared for, except in the reigns of Feroze Shah, Akber, and Shir Shah; and, during all the long years from Mahmud to Aurangzib, with only a slight gleam of light now and then, India was darkened by the most barbarous cruelties committed by tyrannical oppression, by continual civil wars and confusion, and by the wild excesses of arbitrary power.

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY EUROPEAN SETTLEMENTS IN INDIA.

To A. D. 1744.

Intercourse between India and Europe—Age of maritime adventure—Bartholomew Diaz rounds the Cape of Good Hope—Discovery of America—The first voyage round the Cape to India performed by Vasco de Gama—Cabral's voyage and contest with the Zamorin—Vasco de Gama's second expedition—Early Portuguese settlements—Alphonso Albuquerque captures Goa and other towns—The Portuguese Empire in the East—The Dutch trade with India—The English take a part in the same commerce—The East India Company—Contests between the three rival nations—Massacre of Amboyna—The second East India Company—Union of the two Companies—Settlements at Madras—Bombay—Fort St. David—and Calcutta—French settlements in India.

BEFORE we relate the progress of English power in the East, it will be interesting to mention the intercourse which existed in former times between India and Europe. This country was, as we have previously stated, early celebrated for its commerce and its wealth. We do not read, however, of any

direct communication between its merchants and the merchants of Europe, where India manufactures were highly valued, except a few voyages undertaken by the Greeks in the first and second centuries. The commodities of India were conveyed to the shores of the Mediterranean, either by the inland route through Central Asia, or by Arabian merchants to the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea, whence they were carried by caravan to the Egyptian and Syrian ports. They were there received by European traders, who, in the middle ages, principally belonged to the powerful republics of Genoa and Venice, which were greatly strengthened and enriched by this profitable commerce.

At the end of the fifteenth century, however, an eager spirit of enterprise and adventure was awakened in Europe. The kingdoms of Portugal and Spain were among the first to profit by it, and several mariners of those countries succeeded in discovering distant regions which had never before been visited by Europeans.

The Portuguese extended their commerce along the western coast of Africa, and by their voyages gave them a more accurate knowledge of that extensive continent than they had previously attained. At length Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese captain in command of a small squadron, reached the southern extremity of the peninsula, and sailed round the celebrated promontory which has called the Cape of Storms, on account of the tempestuousness which he had experienced there. The

CHAP. IV. Portugal, however, delighted at a discovery which
 A. D. 1487. afforded him the promise of a profitable communication with India, gave it the more pleasing name which it at present bears—the Cape of Good Hope.

No immediate
 results.

The Portuguese did not immediately take advantage of their countryman's discovery, and ten years elapsed before an expedition was prepared in order to make the new route to India of avail.

Discovery of
 America.

A. D. 1492.

Meanwhile a far greater enterprise had been effected by their neighbours and rivals, the Spaniards, a party of whom had, under the command of Christopher Columbus, discovered the islands of the New World, which they at first believed to be a portion of India, and through which they imagined that there existed a short and speedy route to this country. This important discovery increased the desire for maritime adventure, which had, for some time past, been generally felt throughout Europe; but, while the Spaniards continued their researches in America, the Portuguese, under the direction of their sagacious king, Emanuel, made preparations for fresh discoveries towards the East.

The first voyage round the
 Cape to India.

A. D. 1497.

At the beginning of July 1497, Vasco de Gama, an experienced naval officer, sailed from Lisbon in command of three vessels, with instructions to proceed round the Cape of Good Hope to the shores of India. After a voyage of nearly eleven months, during which they visited many places in Africa, Vasco de Gama and his companions landed at Calicut, on

the coast of Malabar. He there entered into communication with the Zamorin, as the sovereign of Malabar was styled, who, though at first inclined to favour him, was afterwards induced, by the advice of the Mussulman merchants, to show him decided opposition. Vasco de Gama himself was imprisoned by one of the king's officers, but was soon released; when, having disposed of his cargo to the inhabitants of the place, most of whom were favourable to him, he set sail for Portugal, where he arrived after an absence of two years and two months. This important voyage was undertaken about the time when Baber, the founder of the Mogul Empire, ascended the throne in his native country, and before the Mahomedan power was extended over Southern India.

The king of Portugal received Vasco de Gama, upon his return to Europe, with marked honour and distinction; and, soon afterwards, prepared a more powerful expedition than the former, to continue the intercourse which had been so prosperously begun. Cabral, the commander of this fleet, steering westward to avoid the coast of Africa, discovered Brazil, which proved in after-times a most valuable possession to Portugal. His reception at Calicut was, in the first instance, friendly, and he was permitted by the Zamorin to establish a factory near the town; but, owing to the misconduct of the Portuguese themselves, as well as to the enmity of the Mahomedan traders, a severer opposition than before was offered, the newly established factory was destroyed, and Cabral, after taking revenge by

CHAP. IV. a partial destruction of the shipping and the town,
 A. D. 1500. departed for Cochin, the king of which was a dis-
 contented dependant of the Zamorin. After lad-
 ing his vessels at the harbour of Cochin, Cabral
 returned to Portugal, and informed his sovereign
 of the hostility and opposition which he had en-
 countered.

Vasco de Ga-
 ma's second voy-
 age.

Emmanuel, desirous of founding an empire in the
 East, speedily prepared a larger and stronger arma-
 ment than had yet sailed for India, and appointed
 the veteran mariner Vasco de Gama to the chief
 command.

Intercourse be-
 tween Portugal
 and India

From this time forward frequent expeditions
 were despatched from Portugal to India with the
 combined objects of commerce and of war. The
 ports of Cochin and Cannanore were generally
 selected for the former purpose: and effectual aid
 was afforded to the Rajah of Cochin against the
 Zamorin, who twice invaded his dominions, and
 was defeated, on the last occasion, by the courage
 of a small party of Portuguese soldiers.

Alphonso Al-
 buquerque.

A. D. 1510.

In 1510, Alphonso Albuquerque, who had, for
 some time previously, been appointed Viceroy of
 India, obtained the chief command in the Portu-
 guese possessions. He was a man of eager, daring,
 and ambitious spirit; and he immediately proceeded
 to realize the schemes of conquest and dominion
 which he had planned. His principal object was
 to gain possession of a secure and strongly forti-
 fied harbour, which might be converted into a
 central port for the Portuguese fleet, and the capi-

tal of a Portuguese Empire. His first attempt was upon Calicut, from which he was repulsed with severe loss. He subsequently captured Goa, during the absence of the Rajah, who had not afforded him the slightest cause for provocation. This city, being situated in a central position on the Western Coast, was admirably adapted for his purpose: it was for many years the capital of the Portuguese dominions in the East, and it remains to this day in their possession.

His next conquests were Malacca in the Malay Peninsula and the island of Ormuz in the Persian Gulf, both favourable positions for the purposes of commerce: and, at the time of his death in 1515, the Portuguese Empire had attained its full extent. They possessed, indeed, only a few factories and forts on the coast of India; but their fleets commanded the Indian Ocean, and they exclusively maintained the trade with Europe.

At the end of the sixteenth century, however, the Dutch began to take part in the commerce of the Spice Islands and of India. They, in like manner, established factories in the places most desirable for trade, and they proved to be formidable rivals to the Portuguese, whose influence and interest in the country gradually decreased before these and other opponents. The Dutch trade was principally with the islands of the Indian Archipelago, and the capital of their eastern possessions was Batavia, a town which they built on the northern coast of Java; but they subsequently obtained

CHAP. IV. Negapatam, Pulicat, Chinsura, and other places on
A. D. 1600. the continent of India.

The English
trade with In-
dia.

At the same time that the Dutch appeared as rivals to the Portuguese, the English made their first endeavours to obtain a share in the same profitable trade. They had previously attempted to open a direct route for their commerce; but they soon discovered that their only chance of success lay in adopting the same channel for it as the Dutch and Portuguese. Some merchants of London combined for this purpose in the last year of the century, and obtained a charter in A. D. 1600, as "The Governor and Company of Merchants trading to the East Indies." This was the origin of the powerful East India Company, which was established when Elizabeth was Queen of England, and Akber, Emperor of Delhi.

Dec. 31st.

Rivalry be-
tween the three
nations.

The English, Dutch, and Portuguese were for many years constantly at war with each other: and the Indian trade, which was ample enough to have occupied the energies of all these three nations, was conducted in a very unbecoming spirit of rivalry and hatred. Piracy was common, and cruel treatment of each other of frequent occurrence. The

Massacre of
Amboyna.
A. D. 1623.

massacre of Amboyna was the most melancholy instance of this jealousy. The Dutch garrison murdered in cold blood the few Englishmen and their dependants who were stationed on that island, although a treaty had been concluded between the East India Companies of England and Holland, by which it had been agreed that the trade should be conducted by the merchants of both nations in a friendly and peaceable manner.

The English East India Company had, moreover, to contend with their own countrymen, as well as with opponents of foreign nations. Private adventurers, on whom they bestowed the contemptuous name of 'interlopers,' endeavoured to interfere with the trade: and the mismanagement that prevailed at the end of the seventeenth century, both in their Indian settlements and in England, induced certain merchants of London to establish a rival company. The directors of the two companies heartily exerted themselves to supplant each other, and to obtain from the English Government a charter, which would afford the successful party the exclusive right of trading with India. These disgraceful contests continued until the year 1702, when the contending parties, finding themselves mutually injured thereby, made an amicable settlement with each other, and formed an association which has since been known by the name of "The United East India Company," all differences between them being finally adjusted in 1708.

CHAP. IV

A. D. 1621.

Rivalry between the English and Dutch merchants.

July 22nd, 1702.

Sep. 25th, 1709.

The new Company consisted of a body of proprietors, who possessed shares in the money by which the undertaking was carried on, and from whom twenty-four persons were chosen to direct the affairs of the Company, and to manage all matters connected with its policy and trade. These arrangements were continued, with various modifications, until the year 1858, when the dominions of the Company were placed under the direct authority of the Crown.

The United East India Company.

A. D. 1722 to 1858.

The attention of the united Company was entirely directed to the continent of India.

CHAP. IV. trade of the English had at first been principally
 A. D. 1639. with the Spice Islands, where they had been brought into collision with the Dutch; but they soon abandoned the commerce of that region to their energetic rivals, and founded settlements at various places in Hindostan. They possessed, however, nothing besides the factories, or houses which they had built for commercial purposes, until the year 1639, when they were permitted by the Rajah of Chandragherry to erect a fortress at Madras. They had, some time previously, been in possession of a factory at Armogum, or rather at Dugarajapatam, about thirty miles south of Nellore; but it was not found to be an advantageous place for trade, and was consequently abandoned.

Acquisition of
 Bombay.

A. D. 1662.

The island of Bombay was given by the Portuguese to Charles the Second in 1662, as part of the dowry of the Princess Catherine of Portugal, whom he married; and it was, a few years later, ceded to the Company on the condition of their paying annually a certain sum to the sovereign.

Fort St. David
 built.

Fort St. David was built at Tegnapatam near Cuddalore, sixteen miles to the south of Pondicherry. The town had been purchased by the Company, and afterwards became the principal station on the Coromandel Coast.

Origin of Calcutta.

A. D. 1700.

In the year 1700, Fort William was constructed at Calcutta, where the English had purchased some land, and, soon afterwards, they were permitted in consequence of services which Dr. Hamilton, an English physician, had rendered to the reigning Emperor, to acquire a larger amount of territory around Calcutta and Madras.

The East India Company at this time encountered other rivals, with whom they had afterwards a more arduous struggle than they had experienced with the Dutch or Portuguese. About the middle of the seventeenth century, the French, who had formed an East India Company in imitation of the English and the Dutch, attempted to found a settlement at Surat. They failed in that quarter; but they subsequently obtained possession of Pondicherry, with a considerable territory around it, where they established a settlement, which prospered rapidly, and upon which the smaller stations of Mahé on the Western Coast, and Chandernagore near Calcutta, were dependent. The contest with this latter power ended in the final triumph of the English, and in the establishment of their extensive Empire in the East, to the history of which the following narrative is principally devoted.

CHAP. IV.

A. D. 1700.

French settlements in India.

April, 1674.

CHAPTER V.

RISE OF ENGLISH POWER IN INDIA.

FROM A. D. 1744 TO A. D. 1753.

War between England and France—The French in India—Dupleix—The English in India—Sepoy corps—Labourdonnais takes Madras—Siege of Fort St. David—Petty war in Tanjore—Peace in Europe: but the war continued in India—State of affairs in Southern India—Nazir Jung and Mirzapha Jung—Anwar-ud-dien and Chunda Sahib—Struggle for the thrones at Hyderabad and Arcot—The French take one side and the English the other—M. Bussy—The French victorious—Salabut Jung made Nizam—Dupleix' triumph and delight—Mahomed Ali besieged at Trichinopoly—Robert Clive takes Arcot—Gallant defence of that city—Victory at Arnee—Defeat of Rajah Sahib near Madras—Lawrence relieves Trichinopoly—Surrender of the French garrison at Seringham—Chunda Sahib murdered—Lawrence defeats the French at Bahoor—Clive takes Covelong and Chingleput—Returns to England.

WE have now to relate the story of British conquest and rule in India; and we know no tale more deeply interesting than the true one which tells us how a few men, far away from the country of their birth and love, won for her an empire of surpassing

wealth, extent, and power, and afterwards governed it with such ability and moderation, that they added to her fame and honour, while they conferred the blessings of prosperity and good government upon the Indian people.

CHAP. V
A. D. 174

In 1744 war broke out between France and England, and soon reached India, where both of those nations had, as we have already stated, several flourishing settlements.

War between
England and
France.

The French were at that time the greater in number. Their chief city was Pondicherry, and their governor was an intelligent and ambitious statesman named Dupleix, who had shown himself most skilful in the management of intrigues and treaties in native courts. He was the first to discover that the soldiers of India, if commanded by European officers, are almost equal in bravery to the troops of Europe, and to form the design of using the frequent quarrels of the Indian princes for the advantage of his country. The first desire of his heart was to conquer India; and he employed all the knowledge and influence which he possessed for the accomplishment of that object.

Monsieur
Dupleix.

The English had no such leader. They were few in number, and knew more of trade than of war. They adopted, however, the policy of Dupleix, by taking native soldiers into their service and by training them under the superintendence of English officers. The number of these troops was at first small; but it was increased, as the English power in India extended, and the sepoys, as the native

The English
in India.

CHAP. V. soldiers are called, have generally proved themselves their devoted and courageous adherents.

A. D. 1746.

Labourdonnais' attack on Madras.

Soon after the war had begun, the French Government permitted Labourdonnais, the governor of Bourbon and the Isle of France,* to collect a fleet, and to attack Fort St. George, the chief settlement which the English then possessed in the Carnatic.

Capture of Madras.

Sep. 10th.

It was not long before he appeared off that fortress. After only five days' defence, the English surrendered the town and fort of Madras, which Labourdonnais promised to restore upon the payment of a moderate ransom. This promise, however, displeased Dupleix, who was very jealous of the successful commander. He sent the English to Pondicherry as prisoners, and treated them in a manner at once ungenerous to them and disgraceful to himself.

Attacks on St. David.

Dec. 1746 and March 1747.

Monsieur Dupleix next attempted to take Fort St. David, the capture of which would have rendered him the sole master of the Carnatic; and he asked for help from the Nabob, whom he persuaded to join him in an alliance against the English. But a strong fleet arriving with troops from England, the attacks against Fort St. David were discontinued: and the French retreated to Pondicherry, where they were, in their turn, besieged.

War in Tanjore.

March, 1749.

But the English, though now the more powerful party, were not strong enough to capture that town, and they consequently abandoned their

* Now called Reunion and Mauritius.

contest with the French, and took part in a petty war which had lately been commenced in the neighbouring province of Tanjore. The Rajah, who had been dethroned by his brother, entered into a bargain with them to assist him against the usurper, agreeing to give them the fort of Devicottah as the price of their aid. A small English force was sent to attack the fort. After a short time, however, peace was restored; the reigning prince surrendering Devicottah and a small portion of the adjacent country, on condition that the English would no longer help his brother, whose cause they dishonourably abandoned.

CHAP. V.
A. D. 1749

Meanwhile peace had been proclaimed in Europe between France and England: but the war did not cease in India. The men of these nations could not, indeed, be the chief parties in the strife; they could not attack each other's armies, nor besiege each other's towns; but they assisted certain native princes who were in open warfare, and, taking different sides in the contest, were arrayed against each other as before.

Peace in Europe, but continued in India.

We must now describe the state of affairs in Southern India, that the events which follow may be better understood. There were, at the time of which we are writing, two large kingdoms in that part of India. The ruler of the first and larger was called the Nizam, whose court was held at Hyderabad, and who, once in reality, but now only in name, governed his kingdom as a dependant of the Emperor. The sovereign of the other was the Nabob of the Carnatic. His capital was Arcot, and he ruled under the Nizam.

State of affairs in Southern India.

CHAP. V. About this period the thrones of these two king-

A. D. 1748. doms were vacated. To the former, Nazir Jung, a son of the late Nizam, succeeded: to the latter, a prince named Anwar-ud-dien. Both of them had rivals.

Contest for the
thrones of Arcot
and Hyderabad.

The opponent of Nazir Jung was one of his nephews, Mirzapha Jung, and that of Anwar-ud-dien was Chunda Sahib, the son-in-law of a former ruler. The two usurpers joined forces, and begged an alliance with the French. This request was eagerly and joyfully granted. It was the very thing Dupleix desired. He immediately sent 400 French soldiers

July 23rd, 1749. and 2,000 sepoys to their aid; and a battle was fought at Amboor, which ended in their favour.

Anwar-ud-dien was killed; and his son, Mahomed Ali, fled with the remnant of his army to Trichinopoly. The French under Bussy, the bravest and most energetic leader they ever had in India, gained many victories, and seated Mirzapha Jung on the throne. The new Nizam did not, however, enjoy his triumph long. He was killed in battle, while attempting to put down a revolt, and Bussy raised Salabut Jung, Nazir Jung's younger brother, to the throne in his stead. Chunda Sahib also gained the power which he had desired.

Dec. 5th, 1750.

Exultation
and triumph of
Dupleix.

This was the hour of Dupleix' triumph. The Nizam and the Nabob both owed their authority to him; he was nominated Governor of Southern India; the highest dignities and honours were bestowed upon him; all his wishes seemed to be fulfilled; and, in the height of his joy, he began to raise a pillar near the site of his chief victory, upon which he intended to place inscriptions setting forth his own praises, and around which a town arose named the City of the Victory of Dupleix.

The English favoured the other party; but, while the French had done much for their allies, they had done little. They had sent a small force to help Mahomed Ali, whom they still owned as Nabob of the Carnatic, but their assistance was of little avail. He was closely besieged in Trichinopoly; and, seeing the French everywhere victorious, he was on the point of surrendering that city, deserting his allies, and joining their enemies, when an event took place which completely altered his views.

CHAP. V.

A. D. 1750.

Apathy of the English.

At this juncture a young Captain in Fort St. David proposed to the English council an attack upon Arcot, the capital of the Carnatic. By this movement, he argued, Trichinopoly would be relieved, as Chunda Sahib would be sure to abandon the siege of that place, when he heard that his chief city was in danger. The members of the council approved of this plan, and the proposer himself was permitted to carry it into effect.

Meditated attack upon Arcot.

The young soldier's name was Clive; and it is chiefly to his great courage and thoughtful skill that the English Empire in India owes its existence. He was a man of bold and high spirit; of a proud and fiery temper; but, at the same time, of genius, tact, and foresight. He had been at first sent out to India as a civilian; but he exchanged a service unsuited to his character for the life of a soldier, and soon showed by his bravery and daring that the army was his proper profession.

Robert Clive

On the 26th of August 1751, he left Madras with a small force of 200 Englishmen and 300 sepoy.

CHAP. V. He marched rapidly to Arcot. Though the weather
 A. D. 1751. was stormy, he still held on his way. Through
 Clive's ad- lightning, rain, and thunder, he led his little band,
 vance upon Ar- until they reached the ancient fortress, which the
 cot. enemy abandoned almost at the very moment that
 Aug. 26th. he marched in. Upon his arrival, he began to put
 the deserted citadel in order. He repaired the crumb-
 ling walls; strengthened the battlements to sustain
 a siege; quieted the fears of the natives who still
 remained within the fort; and prevented any outrage
 on the property which had been left there for safety.
 He made frequent sallies against those parties of
 the enemy which lingered round their former strong-
 hold. In all of these he was successful: but, amidst
 all, he still urged forward the defences for the great
 siege which he was expecting.

Chunda Sahib
 despatches an
 army to Arcot.
 Sep. 23rd.

He had not long to wait. The news of his
 having taken the capital was quickly carried to
 Chunda Sahib at Trichinopoly: and a strong force,
 which soon amounted to 10,000 men, 150 of whom
 were French, was forthwith sent from the main army
 to its relief, under the command of Rajah Sahib,
 the Nabob's son.

Dauntless bear-
 ing of the little
 garrison.

Meanwhile the occupants of Arcot had suffered
 much from death. Only 120 Englishmen and 200
 sepoy were left; but their hearts were strong, and,
 dauntless to the last, they awaited the assault. The
 siege lasted fifty days. The overwhelming army
 brought against them steadily maintained the attack;
 the breaches increased day by day; hunger, as well
 as their foes, fought against the gallant little gar-

rison: but hunger, and danger, and death drew them nearer to each other. The sepoys were starving; but they came to their young leader, and asked leave to give all the remaining rice to their English comrades; the water in which it was boiled being enough, they said, for them.

CHAP. V.

A. D. 1751.

Unselfishness of the sepoys.

Relief from Madras was attempted, but failed. There was, however, aid at hand. An army of Mah-rattas, led by a chief named Morari Row, undecided whether to favour the French or English arms, remained inactive on the frontiers of the Carnatic, not very far from Arcot. The noble defence of that place inspirited their leader; and, when Clive asked him for help, he answered that, as he now saw Englishmen could fight for themselves, he would willingly be upon their side.

Promised assistance.

Rajah Sahib, hearing of this offer, felt that no time ought to be lost, and gave a last summons for the garrison to yield. After trying in vain all the means of insult, bribery, and threats, he prepared for the final assault. He selected for it the anniversary of the Moharrum, the greatest of Mahomedan feasts. His soldiers, maddened with bhang, and frantic with the recollection of the saddening events that festival recalls, were led on to the breaches.

The assault.
Nov. 14th.

Clive was, however, prepared. The enemy was beaten back at every quarter, and retired, leaving 400 killed and wounded on the spot where they had fought. A desultory fire was kept up by the besiegers from four o'clock that afternoon until past midnight, when it ceased. The next morning, when

The victory.
Nov. 15th.

CHAP. V. the sun rose, the vast army which had been so long
A. D. 1751. around Arcot was gone.

Battle of Ar-
nee, and Clive's
return.

Soon after this triumph, Clive received help from Madras, and, thus strengthened, he pursued the retreating enemy. Overtaking Rajah Sahib's army near Arnee, he gained a complete victory, the results of which were important, as 600 sepoys disciplined by the French deserted to his camp, and the enemy's treasure fell into his hands. Having captured on his way the large pagoda at Conjeveram, which had been held by a French garrison, he returned to Fort St. David. His object was gained. The siege of Trichinopoly languished, the resources of the enemy were crippled, and Mahomed Ali was generally acknowledged as Nabob of the Carnatic.

Rajah Sahib is
again defeated
by Clive.
Feb. 1752.

About three months afterwards, Rajah Sahib, with a large army, of which 400 were Frenchmen, advanced against Fort St. George. Clive, who had returned to Madras, went out to meet him; but he would not wait for a battle: he retreated without a blow, afraid, it would appear, of the very name of Clive. That officer, however, overtook the enemy's forces at Covrepauk, where he defeated them with considerable loss. After this battle, Rajah Sahib's troops disbanded, the French portion of them returning to Pondicherry. On his victorious return to Fort St. David, Clive passed the city which Dupleix had founded; when he ordered it to be utterly destroyed, wisely judging that this token of power would inspire with awe the mind of a people who are materially influenced by pomp and show.

The siege of Trichinopoly was still carried on ; and it was, at this time, thought necessary to relieve that city more effectually than had yet been done. The Government, therefore, resolved to send Clive thither ; but, in the meantime, his old commander, Major Lawrence, had returned from England, and was, of course, appointed in Clive's stead. The latter went as second in command.

CHAP. V.

A. D. 1752.

Reinforcements sent to Trichinopoly. March 17th.

Upon their arrival at Trichinopoly, the English found that Mahomed Ali had lately been reinforced by 14,000 men from Mysore, 6,000 Mahrattas, and troops from Tanjore.

The English are joined by new allies.

Being unwilling to sustain an attack from this formidable force, the French retreated to Seringham, an island close to Trichinopoly, in which there were two strongly fortified pagodas, where they were besieged by the English and their allies. Many attempts were made to relieve their countrymen by the French at Pondicherry ; but they were all defeated by Clive's unwearying watchfulness, and, after a few weeks of bold defence, the garrison surrendered.

Capitulation of the French at Seringham. June 3rd.

Meanwhile Chunda Sahib had been deserted by his troops ; and, shortly before the capitulation of his French allies, he gave himself up to the leader of the Tanjore forces, who had promised him protection, but who deliberately broke his word, and beheaded the poor, helpless captive ; and this, we grieve to say, without a word of remonstrance from the English general.

Murder of Chunda Sahib. June 3rd.

Trichinopoly, which had been the scene of constant warfare for the last two years, was now in the possession of the English, who held it for their ally ;

Trichinopoly in possession of the English.

CHAP. V. and, leaving a sufficient garrison there, Major
 A. D. 1752. Lawrence returned to Fort St. David. An attempt
 Action at Ba- was subsequently made to take the strong fort of
 oor. Gingee, in order to establish the authority of Maho-
 Aug. 9th. med Ali in that part of the country; but the attack
 was unsuccessful. Major Lawrence, however, soon
 afterwards met the French army in force near the
 village of Bahoor, between Fort St. David and
 Pondicherry, where he was again triumphant.

Capture of Co-
 velong and Chin-
 gleput.

Sep. 19th and
 Oct. 31st.

Clive had, in the meantime, been sent to reduce
 the forts of Covelong and Chingleput, near Madras.
 His party was chiefly composed of recruits who had
 just arrived from England; but this disadvantage
 gave him an opportunity of showing how good a
 soldier and how skilful an officer he was; for, even
 with such men, he performed the duty assigned to
 him. Not long afterwards he returned to his native
 country for the benefit of his health, which had for
 some time past been failing.

Situation of
 the English in
 the Carnatic.

He left the Coromandel Coast in a far different
 state from that in which he had found it on his
 arrival, eight years before. The French power was
 then becoming greater day by day: it was now
 rapidly declining. The schemes of Dupleix were
 then steadily advancing: they were now completely
 crushed. The English were then occupied only
 with their invoices and ledgers: they were now
 masters of the Carnatic, showing, by their courage
 in battle and by their firmness in times of trial, that
 they were worthy of the great power which they
 were shortly to obtain.

CHAPTER VI.

THE BLACK HOLE AND SPEEDY RETRIBUTION.

FROM A. D. 1753 TO A. D. 1757.

Continuation of the war—Truce between the French and English—Clive's return—Destruction of Ghoriah—Character and conduct of Surajah Dowlah—Capture of Calcutta—The Black Hole—Approach of the avenger—Recapture of Calcutta—Defeat of the Nabob's army—Conclusion of peace—Capture of Chandernagore—Conspiracy against the Nabob—Negotiations with Meer Jaffier—The English engage in the plot—Underhand intrigues of Omichund—His avarice and cunning—He is disgracefully outwitted—Advance of the English towards Moorshedabad—Declaration of war—Battle of Plassey—The victory—The English reach the capital—Meer Jaffier is made Nabob—Disappointment and death of Omichund—Murder of Surajah Dowlah.

THE war was continued after Clive's departure, but neither the English nor the French showed much vigour in its prosecution. Trichinopoly was in the hands of the former ; but constant quarrels about the possession of that city arose between them and their allies, which ended in the alliance being dissolved, and many of the native princes deserting to the French.

CHAP. VI.

A. D. 1754.

Treaty with
the French.

Dec. 31st.

But peace with France was near. The French Government did not approve of all that Dupleix had done. He was recalled from the scene of his triumphs, honours, downfall, and defeat; and returned to his native land, where persecution and an unhonoured death awaited him. A commissioner named Monsieur Godeheu was sent out to treat with the English, in whose favour the negotiations ended, as their officers, being on the spot, knew the importance of the object for which they were treating better than the French officer, who had not been in that part of India before.

Clive's return
to India.

Oct. 1755.

Although there was peace between France and England both in India and in Europe, the English Government clearly foresaw that war would soon break out again. Desiring, therefore, to provide for the safety of their Indian possessions before hostilities really took place, they resolved to send out Clive once more, as the fittest man for the post of danger. They appointed him Governor of Fort St. David; and the king gave him a commission as Lieutenant Colonel in the royal service.

Destruction of
Gheriah.

Feb. 13th, 1756.

He landed at Bombay, and his first exploit after his return was to destroy a horde of Mabratta pirates, who had for years infested the western seas. Their chief stronghold was a fort named Gheriah. It was attacked both by sea and land, and the power of the pirates was completely broken by its fall.

Sudden fug re-
ports from Ben-
gal.

But greater deeds than these were before him. Soon after his arrival at Fort St. David, news of spirit-stirring events was brought from Bengal. The Nabob of that country had taken Calcutta: the cap-

five Englishmen had been murdered in the foulest manner, and their countrymen in the south were now preparing to avenge the infamous deed.

CHAP. VI.
A. D. 1756.

The provinces of Bengal, Orissa, and Bahar, in the north-east of India, had been for a long time under a powerful ruler named Aliverdy Khan, who, like most of the other Nabobs and Rajahs, had formerly governed under the Emperor of Delhi, but was now quite independent, except in name. He died in April 1756.

Aliverdy Khan,
Nabob of Bengal.

Aliverdy Khan was succeeded by his grandson, Surajah Dowlah, who was of a remarkably cruel and selfish disposition. From his youth he had entertained a bitter hatred against the English; and, soon after he ascended the throne, he showed it openly. The English traders at Calcutta, foreseeing the threatened war with the French, had begun to place the walls of Fort William in repair. This proceeding annoyed the Nabob, and he ordered them to stop the repairs; but his order was entirely disregarded. Enraged at this insult, and at a refusal to deliver up one of his subjects who had taken refuge at Calcutta, he assembled an army, and marched against that town.

Character and
conduct of Sur-
ajah Dowlah.

Fort William was ill-prepared to sustain a siege. The walls were old, the garrison small, and their weapons in bad order. Nevertheless, the fort was defended for three days; but the English found the enemy too strong for them, and, when the time for an assault drew near, their hearts failed them. The

Siege of Cal-
cutta.
June 18th to
20th.

CHAP. VI. Governor, the commandant, and many others ran
A. D. 1756. away, and found safety on board the ships in the
river. A hundred and ninety men were still left in
the fort, and they chose Mr. Holwell, a civilian,
for their leader. On the third day the place was
taken, and quickly overrun by the soldiers of the
Nabob, all eager for plunder. The Nabob himself
was soon on the spot. He ordered the prisoners to
be brought before him, and greedily inquired after
the treasure which he fancied had been concealed.
He treated them, however, with kindness, and pro-
mised them that their lives should be spared. He
then gave them over to the charge of a guard, who
led them away, and placed them all—they were a
hundred and forty-six in number—in the common
dungeon of the fort, a dark, dismal room, only
twenty feet square. The unhappy men, after the
promises of safety which they had heard, could
scarcely believe that their jailors were in earnest.
But they were soon undeceived. They were all
thrust into the little room, and the door was locked
upon them.

The Black
Hole.

June 20th.

They were to pass the night there. Filled with
desperation at the thought, they used every means
to free themselves. By turns they struggled, im-
plored, yelled, bribed. But their guards were deaf
to their cries; and even held torches up to the bar-
red window, so as better to see their victims, and
to mock them in their agony. They begged that
the Nabob might be told of their situation. The
Nabob, their jailors answered, was asleep, and must
not be disturbed. The heat was intense, for it was

the middle of the hot weather; and their thirst became unquenchable. They begged for water, and water was brought: but they scrambled for the scanty supply and spilt it, and the soldiers would bring no more.

CHAP. VI.
A. D. 1756

As the night wore away, their sufferings increased. Entreaties, oaths, prayers, rang through the room. They trampled on each other, and fought one with another in their despair. But this gradually subsided. Heat and thirst had done their work: and, one by one, the sufferers dropped down to die in that foul dungeon. When the door was opened in the morning, only twenty-three were found alive, and they were scarcely able to move.

Sufferings of the prisoners.

The Nabob was ignorant of these horrors; but when he heard of them, he showed no signs of anger against the murderers, nor feeling for the murdered. Soon afterwards he returned to his capital in triumph, boasting of his grand deeds, and glorying in his splendid victory.

Return of the Nabob in triumph.

But vengeance was near. News of these events had been sent to Madras, where a force was immediately assembled, and embarked, on the 16th October, in Admiral Watson's fleet, which was lying in the roads. Clive was placed at the head of the army, which had been prepared for departure with the utmost despatch. Owing to adverse winds, however, it did not reach Bengal before December.

Approach of the avenger.

But the moment he landed, Clive marched quickly forward. He took several forts as he advanced;

allies were, and he imagined himself unsafe while they continued in the country. He was looking out for an opportunity to break the peace he had himself desired, and to get rid of the English, whom, at the same time, he most heartily feared. These feelings made his behaviour very inconsistent. One day he pretended to be very friendly to the English; and the next entreated the French commander in the Deccan to help him against them: one day he treated Clive's letters in the most contemptuous manner; and the next sent answers full of the grossest flattery: one day he abused the English resident, Mr. Watts, threatening him with the most horrible death; and the next received him at the durbar with every mark of respect, and presented him with a dress of honour. This conduct, and the constant ill-usage with which he treated his subjects, so disgusted all classes, that a conspiracy was entered into by his principal officers, to dethrone him, and to make Meer Mahomed Jaffier Khan Bahadur, the Commander-in-chief of his troops, Nabob in his stead. This plot was disclosed to Clive and the members of Council at Calcutta. The latter wished to have nothing to do with the affair; but Clive allayed their fears, persuaded them to support Meer Jaffier, and to enter into correspondence with him.

Under and
proceedings of
Omichund.

The plot, in which the English were now engaged, proceeded favourably; but, as the time drew near for its being carried out, it was almost defeated by Omichund, a Hindu merchant of considerable influence. He had been a party to the scheme,

CHAP. VI. but was, at the same time, in the confidence
 A. D. 1757. the Nabob. He resolved, therefore, to take advantage of his peculiar position, and, being very covetous, to add to his riches by the events then taking place; and he informed Clive that he would reveal every thing to the Nabob, unless thirty lacs of rupees were promised him, as a reward for secrecy.

He is disgracefully outwitted by Clive.

The Council at Calcutta were disheartened; but Clive, using his own weapons against the artful miser, persuaded them to prepare two agreements; one on white paper, being the real one, in which Omichund's name did not appear; the other, being a false one, on red paper, in which all that he had asked for was promised. Clive's proposal was adopted. All signed the agreements, except Admiral Watson, who refused to have any thing to do with the matter. Clive determined, however, that this should be no hindrance to the scheme; and he had the wickedness to forge the Admiral's name upon the papers, the latter of which being shown to Omichund, his greediness was satisfied and his silence secured. The real treaty was, of course, the only one with which the conspirators were concerned.

Advance to Moorshedabad.

Meanwhile Clive wrote a friendly letter to the Nabob, to allay the suspicions he was beginning to express; but, at the same time, desired Mr. Watts to hurry forward the preparations for the revolt. Meer Jaffier, however, giving him great uneasiness by his hesitating conduct, Clive resolved to act at once, and to march forthwith for the scene of action.

He wrote to Surajah Dowla, accusing him of bad faith in seeking help from the French; and telling him that the English were on their way to his capital, where they would submit the matters under dispute to the principal men of his court. This was in reality to declare war; and the Nabob, feeling that it was so, put his army in motion, and proceeded against the advancing English.

Clive, in the meantime, had marched from Chandernagore with a small force, consisting of 300 Englishmen, 2,100 sepoys, and eight pieces of cannon. As he drew near the enemy, he wavered. He had heard nothing lately of Meer Jaffer. His situation was dangerous. He was with a handful of troops in a hostile land, and, if he were unable to conquer the enemy, who far outnumbered them, the power of England, not only in Bengal, but throughout the whole of India, would be completely crushed. He was encamped near a river, and, if he crossed it, there could be no retreat. He consequently called a council of war, and asked the opinion of his officers, whether they should cross the stream and fight, or remain where they were.

The greater number, and Clive among them, were against immediate action. After the council, however, he withdrew to a grove of mango trees, and there he spent an hour in quiet thought. In that hour he determined to dare all. Clive was himself again. He returned to the camp, and ordered the men to prepare for an advance upon the morrow.

After a day's march, he came within sight of the

CHAP. VI.

A. D. 1757.

Declat. of the

Amount and position of the British force.

Clive regains his self-reliance.

CHAP. VI. enemy, who was encamped near the village of Plassey. The hostile force was very large. There could not have been less than 50,000 men, 15,000 of whom were cavalry; and they had 40 pieces of cannon under the command of a French officer. Clive's little army bivouacked in a grove of mango trees, about two miles from them; and all the following night the shrill sounds of the rude clarions and cymbals, and the distant hum of that huge host were heard in his camp.

Battle of Plassey. The battle began at sunrise with a cannonade from the Nabob's army. It did not do much damage, as the English were protected in the grove by a high bank of mud. Their few guns returned the fire, and, being well aimed, did considerable mischief. This continued until noon, when a heavy shower of rain damaged the enemy's ammunition.

The retreat. After the rain had ceased, the cannonade was continued till two o'clock in the afternoon, when the small party of English were cheered by the exciting news that the enemy was retiring. One of the Nabob's chief officers had been killed by a cannon ball; and this had so thoroughly frightened him, that he yielded to the treacherous advice of his courtiers, and ordered a retreat, which, for a short time, was conducted in an orderly manner.

The victory. But Clive, advancing from the grove, had taken a small tank which had been occupied by the French during the day, and which afforded him a commanding position for his guns. He then dashed forward, and attacked the entrenched camp to which the

enemy was retiring. His success was complete. The retreat was turned into a rout: and, on every side, the Nabob's strange, barbaric host gave way and fled.

CHAP. VI.
A. D. 1757.

The battle was thus won by Clive, who pursued the enemy for six miles, when he halted for the night.

Clive's reception of Meer Jaffier.

He was soon afterwards visited by Meer Jaffier, who came to congratulate him on the victory which he had gained. Meer Jaffier was doubtful how Clive would receive him, for he had given no assistance to his allies, except, perhaps, by his not interfering in the action, and by his aiding neither one side nor the other. Clive, however, received him in a friendly manner, treated him kindly and courteously, and saluted him as Nabob of Bengal, Orissa, and Bahar.

They advanced together to Moorshedabad, the capital, to seize the treasury of the late Nabob, and to secure the allegiance of the people: and the new sovereign was proclaimed with great pomp in that city, the brave Englishman handing him to the throne in the midst of the thousands who had assembled to witness the ceremony.

Installation of the new sovereign.

June 29th.

The principal men engaged in the revolution met on the following day in the house of a wealthy and influential Hindu, where the treaty was read, and the subject of reward to the English discussed.

Reading the treaty.

The treasure found in Surajah Dowlah's palace was less than had been expected. Meer Jaffier promised, therefore, to pay at once half of the sum which he had agreed to give, and the rest within the next three years: liberal presents were given to the

Final arrangements.

CHAP. VI. English officers : and it was agreed that the English
 A. D. 1757. should enjoy all their former privileges; that they
 should possess the Zemindary of the country south
 of Calcutta, as far as Calpee; and that their goods,
 when passing through the Nabob's territory, should
 be almost entirely free from taxation.

Fate of Omichund.

When the parties retired, as we have stated, Omichund accompanied them, fully expecting to receive the large sum which had been promised to him. He was very much astonished, however, to hear a treaty that was very different from the one of which he had a copy. When the reader ceased, he was told that the red treaty was a sham, and that he was to receive nothing. He immediately fainted; and, on his recovery, it was found that his mind had been affected by the shock. He was an idiot for the remainder of his days, and not long afterwards died, unhonoured and unwept.

Murder of Surajah Dowlah.

July 2nd.

We have also to relate the death of another actor in these events. Surajah Dowlah, as soon as he had ordered the retreat at Plassey, fled from the field of battle. He hastened to his palace at Moorshedabad; but, when he heard that Meer Jaffier had entered the city, he left it in disguise, and, with only two attendants, took his way by night from that which once had been his own. In his flight, however, he was recognized by a man who had in the previous year been cruelly mutilated by his orders. He was arrested, and brought, as a prisoner, into the presence of his successful rival. Meer Jaffier wished to spare his life: but Meeran, the heir apparent, who

was as cruel as his victim had been, persuaded his father to give over the poor, fallen sovereign to his care. This request was granted : and in the dead of night the unhappy man was inhumanly murdered in a distant corner of the palace.

CHAP. VI.

A. D. 1757.

After every thing had been settled between Meer Jaffier and Clive, the latter returned to Calcutta with his little army. A hundred vessels, containing treasure, floated down the river to Fort William, accompanied by the boats of the fleet with their colours flying and their bands playing—a striking contrast to the scene on the same river, when the late Nabob had gone upwards in triumphal show but one short year before.

Triumphal
turn to Calcu
ta.

CHAPTER VII.

CONQUEST OF THE CARNATIC, AND TREACHERY OF MEER JAFFIER IN BENGAL.

FROM A. D. 1756 TO A. D. 1760.

Temporary quiet in the Carnatic—Renewal of hostilities—Troops sent to Tinnevely and Nellore—Relief of Trichinopoly—Arrival of troops from France—Capture of Fort St. David—Lally's unwise proceedings—French expedition to Tanjore—Siege of Fort St. George—Occurrences after the siege—Arrival of Colonel Coote—Capture of Wandewash and Carangoly—Battle of Wandewash—Siege and capture of Pondicherry—Successes in the Northern Circars—Final triumph over the French—Fate of Lally—Invasion of Bahar by the Shahzada—Siege of Patna—Retreat of the Shahzada—Treachery of the Nabob—Defeat of the Dutch expedition—Clive's second return to England.

WHILE Clive and his soldiers were fighting in Bengal, their brethren in arms on the Coromandel Coast were not inactive. For some time after the treaty which we have already mentioned, there was peace and quiet; but the storm of war broke out with renewed fury, when hostilities were again declared between England and France.

CONQUEST OF THE CARNATIC.

Mahomed Ali was left in undisturbed possession of the throne in the Carnatic, but he found it neither an easy nor a quiet seat. Rebellions arose, which he was unable to subdue, and even his own brothers set his authority at defiance. The English, being his allies, felt themselves bound, as they had made him Nabob, to assist him against all his enemies. The Rajah of Mysore had claimed Trichinopoly as the price of the aid which he had afforded, when it was relieved from the attacks of the French. This town was, therefore, defended by the English from all unlawful claimants; and, at the same time, English troops were sent to enforce the Nabob's authority in Madura and Tinnevely, where they were stubbornly opposed by the Poligars, and the half savage tribes which inhabited those provinces. For the same reason, a force was also ordered to Nellore, where an assault made by the English was repulsed.

Observing that the English were thus fully employed, and that their forces were at places so far distant from each other, the French took advantage of the opportunity thus afforded them to attack Trichinopoly. Captain Calliaud, who commanded the detachment in Madura, as soon as he heard of the movements of the French, marched rapidly across the country; entered the city unobserved by the besiegers; defeated all their designs by his activity and vigour; and forced them to retreat to Pondicherry.

Relief of Trichinopoly
Capt. Calliaud
May 20th.

For some time after this unsuccessful attack on Trichinopoly, little was effected by either party,

CHAP. VII. until a fleet appeared off Pondicherry, with a well-appointed armament from France. This force was
 A. D. 1758. commanded by Count de Lally, an officer who, although an Irishman by birth, had taken service under the French sovereign. He was a passionate and ill-tempered man, very jealous of his officers, quite ignorant of the character of the natives, and unable to treat properly either the zeal of the one or the peculiarities of the other.

Arrival of
troops from
France.

April 28th.

Capture of Fort
St. David.

June 2nd.

The way in which he commenced the campaign seemed to promise him success. The very evening he landed he sent troops to attack Fort St. David. The fort was badly defended; and, after a short resistance, fell into his hands.* Delighted with this triumph, he returned to Pondicherry, fully resolved to give himself no rest, until he had driven the English out of India.

Lally's unwise
proceedings.

His great eagerness, however, made him act unwisely. He recalled M. Bussy, who had been very successful in the Nizam's country, and made an enemy of that officer by treating him with unmerited disrespect. All his other measures likewise rendered him unpopular among those who served under him.

French expedition to Tanjore.

June 18th to
August 18th.

He was in great want of money to carry on the war, and, in consequence, invaded the territories of the Rajah of Tanjore, from whom he expected to obtain supplies. But the expedition failed. The

* This is the last we hear of Fort St. David, which had once been a place of great importance. The French destroyed it, and it was never rebuilt.

peasants; whom he allowed his soldiers to ill-treat. *Chap. VII.*
 rose against him; his army was in want of provisions; and he was obliged to return in confusion,
 without the treasure which he so much required.

Having succeeded in obtaining a little money *from private individuals at Pondicherry,* he left *the town* the siege to Madras, which he reached on the 12th of *Dec.* December, with a force of 2,700 French and 4,000 sepoys, whom he quartered in Black Town. The siege of Fort St. George lasted two months, during which period the place was gallantly defended by Colonel Lawrence and Mr. Pigot, the Governor. On the 14th of December, the garrison made a furious sally upon the French in Black Town, but they were unable to take the enemy by surprise, and it was only through the indifference of Bussy that their small party was enabled to return in safety to Fort St. George. But the siege was badly conducted, owing to mutiny and disunion in the French camp; and the besiegers retreated to Pondicherry, upon the arrival of an English fleet, which, towards the close of the second month of the siege, appeared off the town.

Colonel Lawrence took the field as soon as the *the* siege was raised, but in a short time he *resigned* the command. Several trivial engagements took place; many forts exchanged masters; but nothing worthy of special mention occurred.

In the following October, Colonel *Cochran* with considerable reinforcements from England *arrived*

CHAP. VII. instead of proceeding to Calcutta, as he had originally intended, remained at Madras, and assumed the command of the army. One of his first exploits

A. D. 1759. was to take the important fort of Wandewash; which surrendered to him after a short defence; and leaving a small garrison there, he proceeded to

Nov. 30th. another fort, not very far distant, named Carangoly. While the English commander was thus employed, Lally captured Conjeveram, and, advancing quickly to Wandewash, he attempted to recover it from its present possessors. He did not, however, attack the fort immediately; and, while he was preparing for the siege, the English army returned to relieve the place.

Dec. 10th.

Battle of Wandewash.

Jan. 22nd, 1760.

A severe battle ensued, in which the French were thoroughly defeated. At the beginning of the action, Lally imagined that a portion of the English infantry wavered under the fire of his artillery. Eager to take advantage of the confusion which he expected to find in the English ranks, he placed himself at the head of his cavalry, and ordered them to charge. They refused. He suspended officer after officer on the spot, and implored the men themselves to obey him, even though their officers would not. They answered his appeal; but they had not advanced far, when a slight fire from the English threw them into disorder, and they precipitately retired. Finding himself thus deserted, Lally joined the French infantry, which, under his leading, advanced in a firm and orderly manner. Strong in numbers, they bore down the part of the English line which was opposed to them; but, the flanks of the English

army closing in around them, a deadly conflict ensued. The soldiers fought hand to hand; bayonets were crossed; and, the sepoy standing aloof, this fierce struggle was carried on by the Europeans alone: but, after a time, the French retreated in confusion. Exhortations, threats, example, were all unable to stop the fugitives. Bussy threw himself from his horse, and, fighting hard himself, tried to turn them back. All was in vain: Bussy was taken prisoner; and the English were left masters of the field.

CHAP. VII.
A. D. 1760.

After the battle of Wandewash, the English triumphed slowly, but surely, on every side. One by one the enemy's forts fell into their power; until, in the following month of May, the French were compelled to retreat to the fort of Pondicherry, to which the English army laid siege. Lally made a last desperate struggle to free himself; but he was again defeated, and a rigid blockade was kept up until January, when the English took the place, the fortifications of which they entirely destroyed.

Siege and capture of Pondicherry.
Jan. 16th, 1760.

Meanwhile Clive had sent Colonel Forde to the Northern Circars, a large tract of country on the sea coast, extending from Ganjam to Guntoor, which the French had received from Salabut Jung, for their services in placing him upon the throne. After Bussy had left them, they were commanded by an officer named Conflans; but he was by no means equal to their former leader. He was totally defeated at the village of Condore near Peddapore, about thirty miles from Rajahmundry; the French

Successes of the Northern Circars.
From Oct. 20th 1758, to May 12th 1759.

Battle of Condore.
Dec. 9th.

CHAP. VII. garrison at Masulipatam surrendered on the 7th of
A. D. 1759. April, after a siege which had lasted for exactly a
month; the French influence at the Court of the
Nizam was destroyed; and a large tract of country
near Masulipatam was ceded to the English.

Final triumph
over the French.

April 5th, 1761.

The two hill-forts of Thiagur and Gingee were
now all that belonged to the French in India; but
these places did not long remain in their possession.
By April 1761, not one military post in the country
was left in the power of the French.

Fate of Lally.

Soon after the fall of Pondicherry, Lally returned
to Europe. He was there put on his trial by the
French Government in consequence of his failures
in India; was convicted of treason and extortion;
and ended his days ignominiously on the public
scaffold.

Invasion of
Bihar by the
Shahzada.

We must now return to Bengal. Meer Jaffier
had not been long upon the throne, when it appear-
ed quite evident that he could remain on it only by
the help of those who had placed him there. His
country was in danger on every side. The eldest
son of the Emperor of Delhi assembled an army to
attack him, and was aided by many of the neigh-
bouring Nabobs, the strongest of whom was Snja
Dowlah, the Nabob of Oude. Meer Jaffier was
very much frightened by these preparations, and
immediately applied to the English for help. Clive
readily undertook the defence of the man whom he
had himself made Nabob; and, although the small
army which he commanded had been weakened by

sending Colonel Forde to the Northern Circars, he ordered it forthwith to join the Nabob's forces.

CHAP. VI

A. D. 1758

The Emperor's son had laid siege to Patna; but Clive wrote to Ramnarrain, a brave Hindu soldier, who commanded the fort, to defend that post to the last, for he was coming to the rescue with men who never turned their backs.

Siege of Patna.

But there was little need of courageous resistance. The very fact that Clive was coming struck such terror into the heart of the enemy, that in a short time the whole of the large army which had caused so much anxiety to Meer Jaffier dispersed, to assemble again no more. The Nabob, in the fulness of his gratitude, bestowed upon Clive, as a personal estate, the whole of the rent paid by the Company for the lands to the south of Calcutta.

Retreat of Shahzada.

His gratitude, however, did not last long. He imagined that he was not safe upon the throne, so long as those who had made him Nabob remained in the country. He looked about, therefore, for aid from some foreign power by whose assistance he might be enabled to expel the English from Bengal.

Treachery of the Nabob.

He knew that no native prince could hope to oppose them with success, and that the French possessed, at this time, no power in the north, and were too weak to send help from the south. In this dilemma he applied to the Dutch, who had, as we have already stated, a small settlement at Chinsura, two miles above Chandernagore and twenty above Calcutta. Although their nation was not at war with England, the Dutch authorities at Chinsura

Meer Jaffier applies to the Dutch for assistance.

CHAP. VII. agreed to assist him; and wrote for reinforcements
 A. D. 1759. from Batavia, the capital of the Dutch possessions
 in Java, whence seven ships of war arrived in the
 Hooghly soon afterwards, and on board of them
 was an army of 1,500 men.

Defeat of the
 Dutch fleet.

Nov. 24th.

Meer Jaffier pretended to be very much alarmed
 when he heard of their arrival; but he was unable
 to conceal the real state of affairs from Clive, who
 immediately resolved that the Dutch ships should
 not be allowed to proceed up the river. He
 strengthened the fort at Tanna, which commanded
 the approaches to Calcutta, and made vigorous
 preparations for defence; but the Commodore of
 the English fleet engaged the Dutch with spirit and
 success, and effectually prevented their proceeding
 to Chinsura.

Their land
 forces opposed
 by Col. Forde.

The Dutch troops had previously been disem-
 barked, in order that they might march thither by
 land; and Colonel Forde, who had a short time
 before given up his independent command in the
 Northern Circars, was sent, with a small force, to
 oppose them. On their way, they encamped one
 evening in a position where the English commander
 thought that he could advantageously attack them;
 but, as he knew that the two nations were at peace,
 he wrote to Clive for instructions how he was to act.
 Clive was amusing himself with a game at cards,
 when Colonel Forde's hastily written note was
 brought to him. He did not move from the table,
 nor interrupt the game he was playing, but scrib-
 bled on the back of the letter a few words in

reply. "Dear Forde," he wrote, "fight them immediately: I will send you the order of Council to-morrow."

CHAP. VII.
A. D. 1751.

Colonel Forde's action was as quick as his leader's decision. He engaged the enemy as soon as he received this permission, and routed them with so severe a slaughter that few of their number reached Chinsura to tell the tale. Immediately after the action he marched straight to that fort; but the garrison, disheartened at the defeat which their countrymen had reported, and fearing the powerful and energetic enemies whom they had made, acknowledged that they had been in the wrong, agreed to pay the costs of the short-lived war, and asked for peace and forgiveness. Their submission was accepted, and thus the expedition from which Meer Jaffier had expected so much was brought to an end in failure and disgrace. The ingratitude and treachery of the Nabob were overlooked.

Battle of Chinsura.
Nov. 25th.

Convention.
Dec. 3rd.

Three months after these events, Clive, who had in so decided a manner upheld the interests of his country in Bengal, returned to his native land, where he was received with marked distinction and was rewarded with honours and with fame.

Clive's second return to England.
Feb. 25th, 1760.

CHAPTER VIII.

REVENUE, WAR, AND TRADING IN BENGAL.

FROM A. D. 1759 TO A. D. 1767.

*Shah Meer leaves Father again—Defeat of Ram-
sunder—Flight of Patna—Battle near Patna—
Flight of the company—Death of Meeran—Return
of the company—High Tom of Meer Jaffer—Meer
Cassim—Flight of the Beggar—Meer Cassim's
obedience to the British—Murder of Ram-
sunder—Jaffer with the Nizam—The English
at Patna—His attack by Meer Cassim—Meer
Jaffer retires—Battle of Gerish—Captains of
Meer Cassim's army—The English ad-
vance—Murders at Patna—The Nizam goes to
to him—The Beggar, Saiz Dowlah, and Meer
Cassim against the English—They are defeated—
Holding among the sepoy—Battle of Buzar—
Cassim's return—The English receive the sovereignty
of Bengal—Reformations in the Civil Service and
the Army—Cassim engages in formidable raiding—
Leaves India for the first time—His character.*

As soon as Clive had left Bengal, troubles arose on every side. The Shahzada, who had lately become the Emperor of Delhi under the title of Shah Alum, invaded the country again; and he was assisted by Saiz Dowlah, the powerful ruler of

Oude, whom he had recently appointed Grand Vizier of the Empire. A large army was assembled under these two princes and advanced to Patna, which was still commanded by the brave Hindu, Ramnarrain, whom Clive had held in high esteem. Ramnarrain applied to the English for assistance; but, before he had time to receive reinforcements, he engaged the Emperor's army, and was defeated.

CHAP. VII.

A. D. 1760

Defeat of Ramnarrain.

Immediately on hearing of these events, Colonel Calliaud, who had lately come from the Carnatic to assume command of the army in Bengal, marched rapidly forward; effected a junction with the army of Meer Jaffier, which had been placed under the orders of Prince Meeran; and compelled the enemy to retire from Patna. The Emperor attempted a forced march to Moorshedabad; but Colonel Calliaud quickly pursued him, prevented him from laying siege to the capital, and tried to bring him to another battle. Anxious, however, to avoid an engagement, he returned and again besieged Patna, which, in the hurry of pursuit, had been left by Colonel Calliaud with a small and feeble garrison.

Defeat of the Emperor and his allies.

Feb. 22nd.

The fortress was gallantly defended by a surgeon named Fullerton, who repulsed two assaults, and kept the besiegers at bay, until the place was relieved by Captain Knox, who had marched from Moorshedabad to Patna, under the scorching sun of India, in thirteen days, himself marching on foot to encourage his men.

Gallant defence of Patna.

Meanwhile the Deputy Governor of the neigh-

CHAP. VIII. bouring district of Poornia, had assembled an army, and was advancing; with 12,000 men, to the assistance of the Emperor. Captain Knox resolved to prevent the junction of the two armies; and consequently, when these forces drew near Patna, he crossed the Ganges, and, with only 200 Englishmen and a few sepoys, totally defeated them in sight of the walls of the town, where the garrison were anxiously watching the well-contested strife.

Death of Meeran.

July 2nd.

Colonel Calliaud arrived soon after this action; and joined in the pursuit of the defeated army; but on the march his troops were obliged to halt during a severe thunderstorm, in which Prince Meeran was killed by a flash of lightning, as he was listening to a story-teller in the retirement of his tent.

Mutiny of the Nabob's troops.

Without their leader the Nabob's soldiers were unmanageable, and Colonel Calliaud was compelled to return. He remained at Patna, while Meeran's troops proceeded to Moorshedabad, to demand the arrears of pay which had for a long time past been due to them. Meeran had been, for the last year or two, the real ruler of the country; and, after his death, Meer Jaffier, who had fallen into his dotage, was unable to satisfy the demands either of his army or of his English allies.

Interposition of Meer Cossim.

The former were in a state of mutiny: they stormed the palace; and they would have murdered their sovereign, if Meer Cossim, his son-in-law, had not discharged a part of their arrears from his own private resources. The latter also were in urgent need of funds.

It was evident that this state of affairs could not last long. A new Governor had arrived at Calcutta, and he found that the Nabob had not paid the whole of the allowances due to his army, nor of the sum which he had agreed to give the English for placing him on the throne. This gentleman, whose name was Vansittart, resolved, therefore, with the consent of the Council, to deprive Meer Jaffier of all real authority by placing the administration of affairs in the hands of Meer Cossim.

CHAP. VII

A. D. 1760

Arrival of
new Governor

July.

Early in October 1760, Mr. Vansittart proceeded to Moorshedabad for this purpose; but Meer Jaffier would not accede to the proposal, and preferred to resign his position as Nabob. The Governor accepted his resignation, and Meer Mahomed Cossim Khansucceeded to the throne, agreeing, in return for the services of the English, to bestow upon them the revenues of Burdwan, Midnapore, and Chittagong.

Departure
of Meer Jaffier
Oct. 1760Treaty
Oct. 1760

Soon after this change, Major Carnac, who had succeeded Colonel Calliaud in command of the army, advanced against Shah Alam. Only one battle took place, which ended in the defeat of the Emperor, who was compelled to agree to the terms of his conquerors, and to acknowledge Meer Cossim as the ruler of Bengal.

Departure
of Major Carnac
Nov. 1760

But the warfare in that province had not yet ceased. Meer Cossim, the new Nabob, was not the puppet sovereign the English expected him to be. He was, on the contrary, a man of and of remarkable energy. He fully the peculiar position in which he was

Meer Cossim
Nov. 1760

CHAP. VIII. that, while the English remained in the country
A. D. 1761. he would be ruler in name only. While, therefore,
he set heartily to work to bring his dominions into
order, and to fill his empty treasury, he was secretly
preparing to resist the demands of his powerful
allies. He had under him an Armenian general of
great ability, who was endeavouring to bring his
army into a fit state for effective service ; and he
left Moorshedabad to reside at Monghir, a strong
town which was situated a little higher up the river.

State of Bengal. Troubles were gathering around the English,
which were partly brought on by their own mis-
management and misrule. The state of Bengal
was very sad. The English were covetous and
tyrannical ; and their evil example was followed by
their native servants and by others who fraudu-
lently assumed their name and power. The tone of
English society in India has happily changed since
that time : and the majority of those in authority,
while they remember with affection the land from
which they are separated, sincerely desire to pro-
mote the welfare of the people by whom they are
surrounded.

Meer Cossim's
attment of
Ramnarrain. The first measure, which was the forerunner of
trouble, was as unwise as it was unprincipled.
Meer Cossim was in great need of treasure, and
he asked permission of the English to extort what
he required from Ramnarrain, the faithful com-
mandant of Patna, who was supposed to be wealthy,
but who had hitherto refused to submit the accounts
of his government to the Nabob. Mr. Vansittart,
contrary to the advice of Colonel Clive and

Major Carnac, who were both recalled from Patna, CHAP. VI
ordered the troops to withdraw from that city, A. D. 1761
leaving Ramnarrain in the power of the tyrant, who
first plundered and oppressed, and subsequently
murdered him.

The conduct of the Governor in this affair dis- Discon-
gusted all the native noblemen, and, for a time, against the E-
destroyed their confidence in the honour of Eng-
lishmen. Many joined the Nabob, when he openly
waged war; and the knowledge of this feeling of
discontent made him declare his intentions sooner
than he would otherwise have done.

An occasion of quarrel soon arose. Disputes
occurred about the custom-house duties in Bengal. Disputes
The Company's officers had lately engaged in the the Nabob,
inland traffic, and had insisted on their goods pass- 1762.
ing through the country free from taxation: but
the Nabob very naturally desired that both the
native and the English merchants should, in future,
be taxed alike, and, upon the latter refusing to pay
a small duty of nine per cent., he abolished the
custom-house duties altogether. This measure
greatly annoyed the Council at Calcutta: but hos-
tilities were precipitated by the rashness of Mr.
Ellis, their principal agent at Patna, who took
possession of that city. Meer Cossim's rage, when
he heard of this event, was great, and it was not
appeased by the tidings that Patna had been re- Capture
captured on the following day. In revenge, he recapture of
murdered a civilian named Amyatt, who was na.
returning to Calcutta after having accompanied an June 24th
embassy to his court. 26th, 1763.

CHAP. VIII. An English force was immediately sent to oppose him: and the council, imagining that it was the wisest measure to adopt, set up Meer Jaffier as ruler once more. The poor old man, now more than seventy, bent with age, weak with disease, and perfectly imbecile, again accepted the empty title of Nabob.

Restoration
of Meer Jaffier.
July 10th.

Battle of Geriah.
Aug. 2nd.

After two or three engagements, a pitched battle was fought at Geriah. The day was in favour of the English; but after a severer action than had hitherto been fought in India. A detachment of sepoys, dressed and disciplined in the English manner, was commanded by a European adventurer named Sumroo, who showed great courage in the engagement, and led his forces forward in such a dashing manner, that, at one time, the English line was broken, and two of their cannon taken. They were attacked both in the front and in the rear; but their unyielding courage triumphed. The enemy's endeavours were all in vain, and he was forced to retreat to his entrenchments near Monghir. These fortifications were soon afterwards stormed and carried gallantly, and Meer Cossim fled to Patna.

Sep. 5th.

Capture of
Monghir.
Oct. 1st.

Soon afterwards Monghir was taken. When Meer Cossim heard that his favourite city had fallen, he was beside himself with fury; and intimated to the commanding officer that, if any further advance was attempted, all the English prisoners in Patna, where he was then staying, should be put to the sword. Mr. Ellis and Mr. Hay, the senior civilians there, begged the same officer to march instantly;

came what would, without regarding them. The English advanced; and Meer Cassim faithfully kept his word. He ordered every prisoner in the place to be murdered. He could find, however, no one but the renegade Sumroo and a few of his rapiers to perform his will.

Mr. Ellis and his companions were invited to a supper, and, immediately on entering the room where it was laid out, they were assaulted. Mr. Ellis was killed on the spot. The others defended themselves desperately with plates and bottles which they had seized from the table; but Sumroo's rapiers fired upon them from the roof, and, one by one, they fell. All but one were murdered. Even a little helpless child was murdered by the ruffians.

Soon after this bloody deed, Patna was again taken by the English, and Meer Cassim fled to Oude, where he was received by Saja Dowlah, with whom the Emperor of Delhi had also taken refuge.

In the following year, the armies of these three sovereigns advanced against the English, and a battle was fought under the walls of Patna, near which the English forces under Major Garne were awaiting their arrival. The confederate princes were completely routed, and again retreated into Oude.

Soon after this engagement, the English army was in imminent danger. An alarming mutiny broke out among the sepoys, who demanded higher pay than they had hitherto received; and it was not suppressed without very severe measures being

CHAP. V.
A. D. 11

Meer Cassim
killed
1781

Meer Cassim
fled
1782

Defeat of
the confederates
1783

Mutiny of
the sepoys
1784

CHAP. VIII. taken by Major Hector Munro, who had relieved
A. D. 1764. Major Carnac in the command. Twenty-four of
the ringleaders were blown from the cannon's
mouth, and obedience was immediately enforced.

Battle of Bux-
ar, and surren-
der of the Em-
peror.

Oct. 23rd.

Discipline having been restored in this prompt
and energetic manner, Major Munro followed the
enemy, whom he engaged at Buxar. After a con-
test of three hours, the army of the Emperor, Suja
Dowlah, and Meer Cossim was defeated; and the
Emperor, perceiving that the cause which he had
upheld was irretrievably lost, surrendered to the
English commander.

Defeat of Suja
Dowlah.

May 3rd, 1765.

Suja Dowlah, however, was still at the head of
an army, and had entered into an alliance with a
neighbouring Mahratta chief. The English now
acted on the offensive; invaded the territory of
Oude; captured the towns of Allahabad and Luck-
now; and finally gained a decided victory over
the enemy at Corah. Soon after this battle, Suja
Dowlah surrendered to General Carnac, who was
again in command of the English troops: and thus
the two greatest enemies, whom the English had
yet encountered in the north of India, were, at the
same time, prisoners in their camp.

Return of
Clive.

May 3rd.

Meanwhile Clive, who had arrived from England
on the very day this victory was won, was upon his
way to the English camp. Disheartening accounts of
the state of Bengal had reached England. Frequent
tidings were received of the bad conduct of the
English there, which was ruining the newly-won
country within, and of the dangers which threaten-

ed it from without. The Court of Directors and the English Government clearly perceived that something ought speedily to be done to counteract the evil consequences of this state of affairs. They decided lest they should lose the authority and power which had been so recently gained; and they felt persuaded that Clive, who had been made a peer for his former services, was the only person capable of saving their new possessions. They had, therefore, made him Governor of Bengal; and requested him to return thither, with the avowed object of restoring that province to peace and order.

Lord Clive, when he reached Madras on his outward voyage, learnt that the enemy had been defeated, that the Emperor had surrendered, and that the English sepoyas had returned to their allegiance. He heard also that Meer Jaffer was dead. These tidings convinced him that the time which he had long foreseen had arrived—that the English must take the chief power into their own hands.

Soon after his arrival at Calcutta, therefore, he proceeded to Allahabad, where, on the 12th August 1765, the Emperor gave him a grant by which the East India Company received the right to the revenues of Bengal, Orissa, and Bahar; and by which all the territory they had acquired in other parts of India was confirmed to them. There was still to be a Nabob in name: but the real sovereignty was, for the future, to belong to the English.

When he had thus placed the government upon a new footing, Clive undertook the more difficult task

CHAP. VI.
A. D. 1765.

East India
Company.

The British
received the
surrender of
1765.
Aug. 12.

CHAP. VIII. of reformation among his own people. The pay of
 A. D. 1765. the civilians, which had hitherto been very small,
 was raised, so as to remove all inducements to take
 presents from the natives. They were not permitted to carry on private trade, for that had hitherto made them think more of their own gain and good, than of the Company's. They were for the future to aim at higher and nobler objects: they were to be henceforward not merchants, but rulers of provinces; not petty traders, but governors of kingdoms.

Reformation
 in the Civil Service.

Mutiny among
 the officers.

A. D. 1766.

Having effected a reformation in the Civil Service, he turned his attention to the affairs of the army. The officers were, in future, to receive double batta only when they were on service in the field, and not at all times and in all places. This innovation caused a mutiny. Two hundred officers resigned at once: but Clive was not to be moved; he sent to Madras for others to replace them; and, in the end, by his indomitable firmness and courage, suppressed a rebellion which, to a man of less ability and resolution, would most probably have proved insurmountable. He had done the work which he had come out to do: and directly afterwards returned to England, where he was persecuted to death by the people for whom he had won India.

Clive's final
 return to Eng-
 land.
 A. D. 1767.

This is the last time that we shall mention Robert Clive. He was a great, though not a good man; and he had done great deeds. He obtained for England one of the choicest portions of her

Character and
 merits of

Empire. He accomplished what Dupleix had only dreamed of doing. Emperor, kings, princes, bowed to the might of a small country in the far West, and held their dominions at her pleasure. Fair and fertile provinces owned her sway, to be increased ere long by yet richer and nobler possessions.

CHAP. VII

A. D. 1767

CHAPTER IX.

THE FIRST WAR WITH HYDER ALI.

FROM A. D. 1766 TO A. D. 1769.

Rise of a new power in Southern India—Kingdom of Mysore—Adventures and progress of Hyder Ali—Hyder Ali usurps the throne of Mysore—Extension of his dominions—Alliance against Hyder with the Mahrattas and the Nizam—Treachery of the Mahrattas—Advance to Mysore—Defection of the Nizam—Colonel Smith's retreat—Battle of Changuanna—Battle of Trinomalee—Defeat and repentance of the Nizam—Tippoo's foray at Madras—Gallant defence of Amboor—Captain Calvert's spirited message—Defeat of Hyder near Amboor—Hyder retires to the Western Coast—Invasion of Mysore—Capture of forts below the Ghauts—Supersession of Colonel Smith—Hyder's return and partial success—Reappointment of Colonel Smith—Peace concluded with Hyder.

PEACE in the south of India did not last long. The French had been conquered : but a new enemy had arisen. In the centre of Southern India there is a large and wealthy country called Mysore. It had been governed for several generations by Hindu Rajahs ; but, during the occurrences which we

have been relating, a change had taken place in the government of the Mysore territories.

CHAP. IX.

A. D. 1766.

Adventures
of Hyder Ali.

In the year 1766, it was under the rule of a Mahomedan named Hyder Ali Khan Bahadur, who subsequently proved one of the bravest and most skillful foes that the English ever encountered in India. In early life he had been an adventurer and a robber: but he had risen, by dashing bravery and wholesale deception, to so great a height of power, that he had gathered around him a large band of devoted followers; had rebelled successfully against his master, the Rajah; and had made himself sovereign in that master's place. After he had succeeded in gaining the object of his ambition in Mysore, he had invaded the neighbouring countries; and had extended his conquests upon every side: province after province had fallen into his power, and had been formed by him into a strong Mussulman kingdom.

Alliance
with the Nizam
against Hyder.
Nov. 12th.

At this time the English entered into alliance with the Nizam and the Mahrattas to check his progress. The present ruler at Hyderabad was Nizam Ali. He had dethroned his brother, Salabat Jung, whom Bussy had raised to power; and he was now supported by the English, to whom he had given the Northern Circars, with the exception of Guntoor, in return for military help which they promised to afford him, whenever he required it.

State of the
Carnatic.

Mahomed Ali was still the Nabob of the Carnatic, and, although kept upon his throne by the influence of the English, he governed the country

CHAP. IX: himself, except a small portion of territory near
A. D. 1767. Madras, which he had placed in their possession.

Treachery of the Mahrattas and of the Nizam. These sovereigns, with the Mahrattas, were the allies of the English. The Mahrattas began the war. They invaded Hyder's country; but he bribed them to leave it, and without hesitation they deserted the alliance, plunder, or gain of any kind, being all that they desired. The English and the Nizam's armies then advanced into the heart of Mysore, where Nizam Ali also received money from Hyder, and, with consummate treachery, went over to his side.

Colonel Smith's retreat. Colonel Smith, who commanded the English army, was, in consequence of this desertion, obliged to retreat. He retired towards his own frontier; but day after day he was annoyed by the numerous cavalry of the enemy, which completely surrounded him, cutting off his baggage and supplies, and taking prisoner every straggler from the ranks. Amidst all, however, with difficulty and danger on every side, he retired in an orderly, soldier-like manner, through a country of which he knew scarcely anything.

Battle of Changananna.
Sep. 3rd.

At Changananna, the enemy attacked him, and received a defeat. Continuing his retreat after this engagement, he arrived at Trincomalee, where he was very much disappointed at not finding the supplies of which he stood in absolute need. Hyder, aware of this circumstance, again drew near to battle, expecting to find the English army weak and dispirited from want of food. But a bid had been

of rice had been found by accident, and they were better prepared to fight than they had been for many weeks before.

CHAP. IX.

A. D. 1767.

The two armies were drawn up in battle order on the plain before Trinomalee. Along the front of the English army there was an extensive swamp, over which Hyder expected that they would pass, and hoped to throw them into confusion while they were making the attempt. Colonel Smith, however, observing a small hill on the right of the swamp, ordered his troops to march round it, so that they might fall without warning on the enemy's flank. Hyder imagined from this movement that they were retreating, and advanced towards the same hill, in the opposite direction, to cut them off. The two armies met unexpectedly. Hyder's artillery was not up; but the English had their's, and used it well. Their rapid firing threw into confusion the enemy's cavalry, which formed the vanguard, and which had completely covered the advance of the infantry and artillery. They fled on all sides; and the victory was decided by the English infantry, who speedily put the unsupported infantry of the enemy to flight. Hyder's troops could not withstand the impetuous charge; and the rout in every quarter was complete.

Battle of Trinomalee.

Sep. 28th.

Ladies also were in the battle. The Nizam's women, mounted upon elephants, had been placed in the rear to witness his anticipated triumph. When the retreat began, orders were sent for the elephants to be driven from the field; but a voice from one of the howdahs was heard to say, that her

Defeat and penitence of the Nizam.

CHAP. IX. mentioned. He took the forts scattered over it;
 A. D. 1768. but left them defended by insufficient garrisons. He was afterwards sent to supersede Colonel Smith, who had conducted an army into the country of Mysore, and who, having excited the displeasure of the Council at Madras, had been recently recalled.

Hyder's re-
 turn and partial
 success,

Meanwhile Hyder had repelled a party of English from Bombay, who had landed on the Western Coast and had fled in a most dishonourable manner. He then returned to face his foes in the east, and he was, for a short time, successful against them in both the quarters which they had attacked. He gained some advantages in the country of Mysore, principally against the troops of Mahomed Ali; and, descending from the table-land into Coimbatore, the Baramahal, and Salem by passes unknown to the English, he retook the ill-garrisoned fortresses in those provinces.

Conclusion of
 peace.

April 4th, 1769.

In consequence of these events, the Madras Government were anxious to conclude peace: but some disagreement occurred regarding the conditions, as they would not accept the very reasonable and moderate terms which Hyder offered; and Colonel Smith, once more in command of the English troops, prepared to attack him again. But Hyder, frankly acknowledging that he was unwilling to meet Colonel Smith in the field, avoided the English army, marched rapidly to Madras with his cavalry only, and appearing before Fort St. George, informed the Government that he had come to solicit peace. His own terms were now accepted; and a treaty was drawn up, in which each party

agreed to restore the places they had taken during hostilities, and to assist the other in all defensive wars. When the conditions of peace had been definitely arranged, Hyder returned to defend his own country, which was in danger from the

CHAP. IX.
A. D. 1769.

CHAPTER X.

CHANGES IN THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA, AND WAR
WITH THE MAHRATTAS.

FROM A. D. 1767 TO A. D. 1780.

State of Bengal—Discontent in England—The Company stand forth as dewan—Peace and good government in Bengal—The Regulating Act—Feuds in the Council Chamber—Expulsion of the Rohillas—Arrangements regarding Corah and Allahabad—Intrigues of Nuncomar—His trial and execution—Mr. Hastings gains a majority in the Council—State of affairs at Bombay—Dissensions among the Mahrattas—Alliance with Ragoba—Interference of the Government of Bengal—Treaty of Poorundher—Mahrattas prepare for war—Operations against the Mahrattas—The march from Bombay—The retreat—Convention of Wargaum—Halt of the Bengal corps—Colonel Goddard's march to Surat—His successes—Capture of Lahar—Storm of Gwalior—End of the campaign—Treaty of Salbye.

WE now return to the affairs of Bengal, which, after Clive's departure, had again fallen into disorder. The reforms which he had made were not properly carried out. Private trade was still per-

CHAP. X. of Justice was to be established at Calcutta; and in
 A. D. 1773. one was allowed to take presents of any kind from
 native of the country. This was called the Regula-
 ting Act. The first Governor-General under it was
 Warren Hastings; and the first councillors were
 Mr. Barwell, Mr. Francis, General Clavering, and
 Colonel Monson. Mr. Barwell was then in India;
 but the three latter were sent out from England.

The New Su- As soon as the Council had taken its seat, quar-
 preme Council.rels arose upon every question which was brought
 Oct. 20th, 1774. before it. The three councillors from England
 soon began to entertain a thorough hatred towards
 the Governor-General, and opposed him upon every
 occasion. Mr. Barwell, however, always voted
 upon his side. There were thus two parties in the
 Council Chamber at Calcutta: and, as the one
 against the Governor-General was at first the more
 numerous, he possessed, for a considerable time,
 but little authority or power.

Expulsion of The first cause of dispute was Hastings' conduct
 the Rohillas. towards Suja Dowlah, the Nabob of Oude, to whom
 April 23rd. he had rendered assistance in expelling from Rohil-
 cund certain troublesome Affghan chiefs who had
 conquered that country. Hastings had, unjustly
 we think, consented to aid the Nabob in this pro-
 ject. He had sent a small force into Rohileund under
 Colonel Champion, who subdued the Rohillas in
 a single engagement; and he had given their coun-
 try to Suja Dowlah, who had treated them with
 the greatest cruelty.

He had received money for this proceeding on
 behalf of the Company; and he had also ceded to

Suja Dowlah the provinces of Corah and Allahabad, which had formerly been given to the Emperor of Delhi, who was unable to protect them from the incursions of the Mahrattas, on the condition of his paying fifty lacs of rupees more, and protecting his weak neighbour, Cheyte Sing, the Rajah of Benares. But this arrangement was annulled by the majority in the Council. Suja Dowlah died in February 1775, and a new treaty was made with his son and successor, who agreed to resign all his claims to the territory of Benares, in exchange for the provinces of Corah and Allahabad.

CHAP. X.

A. D. 1774.

Arrangements
regarding Corah
and Allahabad.

May 21st, 1775.

But the chief event of this time was the fate of Rajah Nuncomar, a wealthy, but vicious, brahmin of Calcutta. When Nuncomar observed that the majority in the Council desired in every way to annoy the Governor-General, whom he also hated, he accused Mr. Hastings of having taken bribes, especially from a wife of the late Meer Jaffier, a lady who had been appointed guardian to the infant Nabob. Mr. Francis and his party were delighted when they heard of this accusation. They espoused Nuncomar's cause, treated him with every token of respect, and commenced an illegal trial of their superior.

Intrigues of
Nuncomar.

While, however, these transactions were taking place, Nuncomar was unexpectedly brought before the new Court of Justice on a charge of forgery, an offence which he had committed many years before. He was tried, found guilty, and hanged. The sensation among the Hindus was great. Nuncomar

His trial and
execution.

Aug. 5th.

CHAP. X. was a brahmin, and of noble birth; and for both
 A. D. 1775. these reasons they looked up to him. Thousands
 crowded to see the execution: but, though there
 was great excitement, no attempt was made to
 rescue him. His death put an end, of course, to
 the unfair trial of the Governor-General.

Mr. Hastings
 gains a majority
 in the Council.

The quarrel still continued: but Warren, Hastings gradually gained more power than he had at first possessed; for General Clavering and Colonel Monson both died, and by their deaths he obtained a majority in the Council.

State of affairs
 at Bombay.

Meanwhile important events had taken place in a part of India which we have hitherto scarcely noticed. While the other Presidencies had been disturbed by wars and tumults, the Government of Bombay had enjoyed a season of quiet. They were now to have their share of warfare. They had, for some time past, been desirous to obtain several places near Bombay, which would be of use to them for trading, and in particular of the island of Salsette, which the Mahrattas had a few years previously taken from the Portuguese.

Dissensions
 among the Mahrattas.

There had for some time been dissensions among the Mahratta chieftains for the position of Peishwa, or prime minister, who possessed the chief power in the administration of the Mahratta territories; and the Government of Bombay attempted to avail themselves of these disputes to gain what they had so long desired. While the Mahrattas were thus occupied with their own affairs, the Government of Bombay sent a small force to take possession of

Salsette, in order to prevent it from falling into the hands of the Portuguese, who were preparing to recapture it; and soon afterwards entered into an agreement with Ragonath Row, or Ragoba, one of the chiefs who claimed the office of Peishwa, to help him against his rivals, if he would cede to them that island, and other places near Bombay, in return for their assistance.

CHAP. X.

A. D. 1775.

Upon Ragoba's consenting to this arrangement, a force was sent to aid him, but the Government of Bengal, which now possessed supreme authority over the other Governments, peremptorily interfered. They ordered the recall of the troops, which had already been despatched to the scene of action; and desired Colonel Upton, an officer whom they had sent from Bengal, to negotiate with Ragoba's opponents, who, on their parts, agreed to give up Salsette and the adjacent islands, if the English would cease to uphold his cause.

Treaty of Poondherry.

March 1st.

Amended

May 22nd, 1770.

For some time the Mahrattas were quiet; but it was soon discovered that they were engaged in plots against the English. There was a prospect of further war between England and France: and news reached Calcutta that a French officer was at Poona, the capital of the Mahratta country, and was instructing the Mahratta army in the art of war.

The Mahrattas prepare for hostilities.

Mr. Hastings immediately ordered a small detachment to march across from Bengal to Bombay; and desired the Government of the latter place to despatch a second force from Bombay to co-operate with it. This order was immediately obeyed. Four

Operations against the Mahrattas.

CHAP. X. thousand men were sent under Colonel Egerton,
 A. D. 1778. who was soon compelled by illness to relinquish his
 command, and was succeeded by Colonel Cockburn;
 and two civilians accompanied the detachment to
 negotiate with the enemy. Divided authority of
 this nature was decidedly bad.

Advance to
 Poona.

The Bombay forces marched towards Poona. Ragoba was with them, having been taken into alliance again; but he had not brought a Mahratta force, as he had promised. It would join, he said, as soon as the English had gained some decisive advantage. This answer did not produce the effect which he intended. The commanders grew afraid. The enemy was in sight; but their hearts failed them, and they actually turned their backs without trying their opponent's strength.

The retreat.
 Jan. 11th, 1779.

The Mahrattas were strong in cavalry, and their horsemen galloped round and round the retiring party, keeping off all supplies of food, and cutting off all who might be compelled to fall out of the ranks by illness or fatigue. If they apprehended an attack, they immediately drew off to a little distance, but held themselves in readiness to return directly the march was resumed.

Convention of
 Wargaum.
 Jan. 13th.

Back marched the detachment in disorder and disgrace. But in two days they halted; and a treaty was entered into with the enemy, who permitted them to return unmolested to Bombay, in exchange for their giving up every thing that they had desired to obtain. Two gentlemen were sent

as hostages to the Mahratta camp; and Ragoba, making the best terms that he could for himself, surrendered to one of his rivals.

CHAP. X.

A. D. 1779.

Meanwhile the detachment from Bengal had done nothing. Colonel Leslie, its commander, had lingered on the road, and had meddled in the quarrels of certain petty princes, with which he ought not to have interfered.

Halt of the Bengal Corps.

Mr. Hastings, disapproving of this delay, decided on recalling him, and appointed in his stead a brave and energetic officer named Goddard. Immediately on receiving the news of his appointment, the new commander marched forward rapidly. Messages reached him from the Bombay corps; he received contradictory orders from the civilians who accompanied it; but he continued his march to Surat, without regarding the messages or the advice of others. The Mahratta cavalry frequently menaced him; but they did not dare to attempt an attack on his well-disciplined little army.

Col. Goddard appointed to the command.

Dec. 3rd, 1778.

Reaches Surat

Feb. 1779.

Colonel Goddard undertook no offensive operations against the enemy for a year after his arrival at Surat. The period was spent in attempts at negotiation: but in January 1780, he took the field again; captured Ahmedabad on the 15th of February; and in the following April defeated the Mahratta army.

His subsequent success.

A. D. 1780.

While Colonel Goddard was conducting the campaign in the west, Warren Hastings had sent a small force under Captain Popham to assist a new ally—

Capture of Lohar.

April 21st.

HAP. XI. The news caused a painful sensation at Madras.
 . D. 1780. But Warren Hastings, when he heard it, acted quick-
 energetic pro- ly and well: Within fifty-two days, he sent rein-
 ings of War- forcements to Madras under Sir Eyre Coote, the
 Hastings. Commander-in-chief in Bengal; ordered a detach-
 ment to march thither from Bengal by land; col-
 lected treasure from every place where he could
 obtain it; suspended the dull-headed Governor;
 entered into negotiations with the Mahrattas; in
 short, did every thing that lay in his power to meet
 the danger boldly.

Arrival of Sir
 Eyre Coote.
 Nov. 5th.

Sir Eyre Coote did not take the field immediately
 after his arrival. He found the army badly equip-
 ped and inadequately provided for, and was obliged
 to occupy himself at first in preparing it for active
 service. On the 17th of January in the following
 year, he began to act against the enemy, his first ob-
 ject being to relieve those forts which still held out
 against Hyder. Wandowash, the scene of one of
 his early victories, and Chingleput were succoured.
 The former town had been bravely defended by Lieuten-
 ant Flint, who had been sent there, when it was
 found that the commandant under Mahomed Ali
 was not to be trusted. Sir Eyre next proceeded to
 Pondicherry, which the French had attempted to re-
 take; and then advanced to Cuddalore, where he
 remained for some time without undertaking any
 further offensive movement. In June, he attempted
 to capture Chillambrum, a fortified pagoda about
 thirty miles from Cuddalore; but the party which
 was sent upon the expedition was repulsed with
 considerable loss.

Failure at Chil-
 lambrum.
 June 16th, 1781.

Hyder Ali had not been near the English army

for a long time; but he had been fully employed in other places. He had taken Amboor, Thiagur, and other forts, and had overrun the whole of Tanjore but the capital. The news of the failure at Chil-lambrum induced him to draw near the position of the English, and he marched rapidly to Cuddalore near which town he prepared a strongly fortified encampment. Sir Eyre Coote had long wished to bring him to battle, and a favourable opportunity was now offered for it. Hyder also seemed to desire an engagement, although he had, up to this time, shunned meeting the English army in the field.

CHAP. XI.
A. D. 1781.
Hyder Ali's
movements.

But Sir Eyre Coote though confident of victory, calmly prepared for defeat. The English fleet remained, at his request, close in shore, so as to afford him the means of leaving the coast in case of a reverse.

Sir E. Coote's
preparations.

At seven in the morning of the 1st July, 1781, the English marched out of their camp in battle order. They continued to advance, until they came in sight of Hyder's army, which was drawn up across the road to Cuddalore, with its left on a range of sand-banks that ran parallel to the sea, at the distance of a few hundred yards. Its right was upon some hills a little way inland; and, along the line, several powerful batteries were placed so as to fire from different directions across the plain, where Hyder expected that the English would make their attack.

Battle of Po-
Novo.
July 1st.

The English General spent about an hour in making himself fully acquainted with the position of the

The reconnois-
sance.

CHAP. XI. enemy, his men remaining during that time under a
 A. D. 1781. slight fire, to which they were ordered not to return
 a single shot. His plans were at last made. He
 perceived that the enemy wished him to advance
 straight across the plain, where he would be exposed
 to the fire of all the hostile guns, and where
 Hyder's cavalry could charge with advantage, if his
 troops were thrown into confusion. Dividing his
 army, therefore, into two columns, he turned to his
 right, and advanced along the space between the
 sand-banks and the sea.

The attack.

Hyder also rapidly changed his position. The
 first column of the English army met the enemy at
 an opening in the sand-banks. They formed in the
 plain beyond, under a severe cannonade; and wait-
 ed, with passive courage, until the second column
 had taken possession of the sand-banks which they
 had already passed. The General, riding along the
 ranks, exhorted his men to be patient, and to reserve
 their cartridges 'for a time.' At length an aide-de-
 camp galloped up to inform him that the sand-
 banks had been carried. Immediately he received
 this information, he ordered the artillery to open
 fire; and the order was obeyed so effectually, that
 the enemy in that quarter was speedily put to
 flight.

The victory.

Meanwhile the second column had been engaged
 in a severe struggle on the sand-banks: but they
 had repulsed the enemy triumphantly; had taken
 the position which they desired; and, in a short
 time, the whole of Hyder's army was in full retreat.

During the action, Hyder had been seated on a

INVASION OF THE CARNATIC.

neighbouring hill, surveying the scene below. When he was told that a retreat had been commenced, he would not believe the report, and grossly abused those who brought it. Nothing could induce him to move, until a favourite servant seized his feet, thrust on his slippers, and made him mount a horse, upon which he fled rapidly from the field.

CHIV
A. D.
Hyder
may.

This victory was very important. It restored the terror of the English name; effaced the unfavourable effects of Colonel Baillie's defeat; and put an end to the hopes of final conquest which Hyder had begun to entertain.

Result
victory.

Tippoo was attempting to retake Wandewash, when the news reached him, and he immediately effected a junction with his father, who had retired to Arcot, intending to prevent Sir Eyre Coote from meeting the detachment which was expected from Bengal. But Colonel Pearse, the commander of this detachment, advanced along the road to the east of the Pulicat lake, a route which had never been used by an army before, thus enabling Sir Eyre to effect his object without approaching Hyder's position.

Joined
the Ber
tachment
Aug.

Colonel Pearse had marched from Calcutta through countries of which very little was at that time known; and had shown much tact and skill in his negotiations with a people half inclined to be unfriendly.

Col.
marched
Aug.

After receiving this reinforcement, Sir Eyre returned towards Arcot and Vellore. Hyder's army again drew near to intercept him: and another battle was fought on the very spot, where Col.

Secor
at Polli
Aug.

CHAP. XI. soldiers had been so cruelly massacred the year
A. D. 1781. before. The bones of many of them still lay upon
the ground, and their countrymen passed over these
sad memorials, as the army advanced to fight the
authors of that unmanly and useless outrage.
The action was indecisive. Hyder claimed it as a
drawn battle; but the English, although they did
not gain a complete victory, caused the enemy to
retreat, and encamped upon the field.

Battle of Sholingur.

Sep. 27th.

On the 27th of September, however, another
battle was fought near the hill of Sholingur, at no
great distance from Vellore. Hyder was taken by
surprise. He maintained his ground for some time;
but finding himself worsted, he ordered a retreat;
and, while that movement was being effected, he
gave directions for his cavalry to charge over and
over again, although they were repulsed in each
encounter, in order that his artillery might be en-
abled to retire in safety. The enemy's loss was about
5,000, while that of the English was only a hundred.

The 20th Madras
Native In-
fantry.

The 20th Madras Native Infantry highly dis-
tinguished themselves in this action; and, in re-
mory of the good service which they performed on
this occasion, they still bear the name of "Sholingur"
upon their colours.

Relief of Vellore.

Sir Eyre Coote was enabled by this battle to re-
lieve Vellore, which had been blockaded by the
enemy, and had been considerably reduced by fa-
mine. Soon after, he retired to Madras, in the
neighbourhood of which he quartered his troops
during the monsoon.

During this campaign, war broke out with the Dutch. Their possessions in India were taken by the English. Sadras and Pulicat soon fell: and Negapatam yielded after a short attack from the fleet, and from a small land force under Sir Hector Munro.

CHAP. X.

A. D. 178

Capture of
Negapatam.

Nov. 12th

The principal event of the next campaign, which commenced in the following January, was the capture of Cuddalore by Hyder. He subsequently attempted the siege of Wandewash, which Sir Eyre, for the fourth time in his career, relieved. Not long afterwards, Sir Eyre Coote marched back to Madras. His army was thinned by sickness: he was himself very ill, and, on arriving there, he left his beloved troops to join them again no more. The best praise that can be given to Sir Eyre Coote is to mention the extreme love and veneration with which the sepoys for many years regarded his memory and name.

Renewal of
campaign.

Jan. 1782

After Negapatam had been taken from the Dutch, some of the troops who had been engaged in its capture were sent, under Colonel Brathwaite, into the kingdom of Tanjore, where for some time they did good service against the enemy. The expedition, however, ended sadly. Colonel Brathwaite was one day encamped, with only two thousand men, on a plain, where his guides assured him that he was at some distance from the enemy, a large number of whom had lately assembled in the neighbourhood. The spies were, as usual, in Tippoo's pay. Though warned, Colonel Brathwaite would not move from the ground which he had chosen, and remained in

Col. Bra
thwaite's defeFeb. 16th
18th, 1782.

HISTORY OF INDIA.

CHAP. XI. sula from Tanjore and Trichinopoly towards the
A. D. 1783. Western Coast, proposing to join General Macleod,
who commanded a force at no great distance from
Mangalore. On hearing of the violation of the truce,
however, he altered his plans; advanced towards
Palghaut and Coimbatore; took both those towns;
and was preparing to march upon Seringapatam,
there to avenge Tippoo's broken faith with regard
to Mangalore, when he received orders to suspend
hostilities on account of the negotiations which
were then taking place.

Treaty of Man-
galore.
Mar. 11th, 1784.

After many evasions and delays, a treaty was
concluded, by which it was agreed, among other
conditions that each party should restore what
had been gained during the time of warfare, and
that the allies of each should enjoy all the advan-
tages of the peace.

CHAPTER XII.

LAST DAYS OF HASTINGS IN BENGAL, AND WAR WITH
TIPPOO SULTAN.

FROM A. D. 1781 TO A. D. 1792.

Gaining supplies for the war—Cheyte Sing—Hastings goes to Benares—The Rajah taken prisoner—Hastings in danger—Cheyte Sing defeated—Hastings at Chunar—Leaves India—Various opinions regarding his character—Change in the Government of India—Mr. Peck's Bill—Mr. Pitt's Bill—Lord Cornwallis—Rumours of war—Tippoo's cruelty towards the Nairs—His war against Travancore—Is repulsed—Invasion of Travancore—War with the English—Marching and counter-marching—Lord Cornwallis arrives at Madras—Bangalore taken—Advance on Seringapatam—Retreat—Operations on the Western Coast—Lord Cornwallis at Bangalore—Nundidroog taken—Second advance on the capital—Siege of Seringapatam—Conclusion of peace—Tippoo's sons surrendered as hostages.

THE expenses of the war which we have just related, were very great. It was, therefore, one of the first objects of the Governor-General to obtain the means wherewith to carry it on in an effectual and creditable manner. He applied for the necessary supplies of treasure to all the native rulers over whom he had control; and, among others, to Rajah Cheyte Sing, the Zindemar of Benares. The

CHAP. XII.

A. D. 1781.

Supplies demanded from Cheyte Sing.

whole of that estate had been ceded to the Company by Azoph-ud-dowlah, the Nabob of Oude, in 1775 : and a fresh grant for the zemindary had then been given to Cheyte Sing, who from that time held it under the English Government, instead of under the Nabob of Oude. When war was declared against France, a contribution was demanded from the Rajah for the defence of the State, which he was bound by the terms of his sunnud to afford ; and the demand had since been renewed each year. But Warren Hastings was not satisfied. Supplies were urgently needed, and the Rajah was supposed to be wealthy. He had, moreover, offended the Governor-General by taking part, in a measure, with the Council, and Warren Hastings was not sorry to have an opportunity of bringing him into disgrace. He was required to furnish a small force of cavalry, which he agreed to do after many delays : more treasure was demanded ; and, upon his refusing to pay it, a large sum of money was imposed upon him as a fine, which he strove to the utmost of his power to evade.

Warren Hastings proceeds to Benares. G. 14th.

But Warren Hastings was determined to obtain his object, and proceeded to Benares to have a personal interview with the Rajah, and to enforce obedience. He believed that the Rajah was able, but unwilling, to assist him, and was thoroughly disaffected towards the State. Cheyte Sing went out a long distance to meet him ; and, in the most abject manner, asked for reconciliation and forbearance ; but, the day after their arrival at Benares, the Rajah's tone gave the Governor-General so much

displeasure, that, on the following morning, orders were issued for his arrest. These orders were obeyed in a quiet and peaceable manner; and Cheyte Sing was placed in confinement. The sepoy's who had accompanied the Governor-General were, however, few in number. Two companies only were sent to arrest the Rajah; and they, by some unaccountable oversight, took with them no ammunition.

CHAP. XI.

A. D. 178

Arrest of
Cheyte Sing

Aug. 16th

The news immediately spread through the city, which was crowded with pilgrims, sanyasis, and brahmins from all parts of India. The people, furious at the indignities offered to their prince, rose in rebellion. They entered the palace where the Rajah was detained; slew all the sepoy's; overpowered the English officers; and released Cheyte Sing from confinement. He escaped in the midst of the tumult, and fled from Benares across the river Ganges, down the steep banks of which he lowered himself by a string hastily made of the turbans of his followers, who pressed after him to see him safely out of the city.

Insurrec
at Benares.

The situation of Warren Hastings was now very dangerous. He was left with only a few Englishmen and a small guard in the heart of a turbulent crowd; and all chance of life seemed to have deserted him. Calmly and quietly, however, he sent messenger after messenger for aid, who, with letters written on slips of paper rolled up in quills, and placed in their ears instead of earrings, passed safely through the dense, dark mass

Extreme d
ger of War
Hastings.

CHAP. XII. of people. But even during that time of danger,
 A. D. 1781. his self-possession was so great that he was able to
 prepare a despatch regarding the treaty with the
 Mahrattas, which he sent in the same manner as
 the other letters. In a short time, a few sepoys
 arrived : but he did not think it prudent to remain
 longer where he was, and he fled by night to
 Chunar, a strong fortress near Benares.

Cheyte Sing's
 revolt and de-
 feat.

Cheyte Sing was up in arms, and with an undis-
 ciplined mob prepared to resist the authority of the
 Governor-General. But faithful sepoys under
 their English officers were coming from every side.
 His adherents were dispersed ; and he retired to
 the fort of Bidjeeghur, fifty miles from Benares. A
 force was sent against that place, upon which he
 fled to Bundelcund, in an exile that ended only
 with his life. His nephew was placed in possession
 of his estate ; the annual tribute was considerably
 increased ; and the management of the district
 was confided to the charge of the new Zemindar's
 father.

Fresh treaty
 with the Nabob
 of Oude.

Sep. 19th.

Meanwhile Warren Hastings, while at Chunar,
 had employed himself in settling matters of impor-
 tance with the Nabob of Oude, who had failed to
 pay his stipulated tribute. Money was demanded
 from him also ; but he affirmed that he had none to
 give. A new treaty was, therefore, entered into, by
 which he was allowed to obtain the required trea-
 sure from his mother and grandmother, who were
 strongly suspected of having attempted to excite an
 insurrection in his dominions. It was taken by

force; and one of the chief charges against Warren Hastings, when, after his retirement, he was put upon his trial in England, was founded on the permission that he had given to the improper means, by which the treasure was procured from these two princesses.

CHAP. XII.

A. D. 1781.

Affair of the Begums.

Warren Hastings did not stop in India very long after these events. During the remainder of his stay, he exerted himself in the management of the large country which was under his control; in making and strengthening alliances with the native states; and in promoting, in every way, the good of the people committed to his charge. He stayed long enough to see peace restored to the Carnatic, and the English name covered with increased honour and renown: and he left the country sincerely regretted by the people for whom he had cared.

End of Hastings' administration.

Feb. 8th, 1785.

After his return to England, he was brought to trial upon many charges of misgovernment, and unfairness in his treatment of the native princes. The trial lasted for many years, and at length ended in his acquittal.

Trial of Warren Hastings.

There are various opinions about Warren Hastings. Some altogether praise, and others altogether condemn him. A middle course would be nearer the truth. We cannot think well of all that he did: but we dare not fully condemn one who did for India great and glorious service; whom the voice of his country pronounced 'not guilty'; and to whose memory the inhabitants of Bengal for years after looked back with mingled feelings of reverence and love.

His character.

CHAP. XII. Before he left India, important changes had been made in the government of this country. Indian affairs had been frequently discussed in the Houses of Parliament, and endeavours had been made to frame bills with reference to the extending empire of Great Britain in the East.

Mr. Fox's Bill. In 1783, Mr. Fox, one of his Majesty's Principal Secretaries of State, attempted to bring in a bill which, if it had passed, would have taken the government of India from the East India Company; but the scheme failed, and Mr. Fox and the ministry of which he was a conspicuous member, soon afterwards resigned.

Mr. Pitt's Bill. Mr. Fox's youthful successor, Mr. Pitt, turned his attention to the same subject; and, in 1784, brought in a bill by which the authority of the Company was confirmed; but a new body called the Board of Control was instituted for the management of Indian affairs. The members of this board were to be appointed by the Crown, and were to exercise a measure of surveillance over the Court of Directors. By this arrangement the government of India was brought under the authority both of the Company and the Crown.

Lord Cornwallis appointed Governor-General. In 1786, Lord Cornwallis was appointed Governor-General. He left England with strict injunctions to preserve peace in India, if he possibly could; and he assumed charge of the Government, with an anxious desire to fulfil these instructions. But he found it impossible to do so. He had not

been very long in India, before the great enemy of the English at Mysore obliged him to declare war. CHAP. XII.
A. D. 1786.

Since the peace of 1784, Tippoo Sultan had been secretly preparing for a renewal of strife. He had been adding to his army, improving his soldiers, and using all his influence to induce the Nizam to join him in alliance against the English. During that period he had not been entirely at peace. He had made war against the people on the Malabar Coast, and had conducted it in the most barbarous and savage manner. He had fought not only against the inhabitants, but against their religion: and his cruelty to the Nairs, a class of high-born Hindus who inhabit that coast, had inspired them with a burning desire for revenge. Tippoo's preparations for war.

Many of the Nairs had fled into the country of the Rajah of Travancore, which Tippoo resolved, at this time, to invade. The shelter which the Rajah had afforded to some of the exiled Nairs was the principal cause of quarrel: but there were also disputes about two forts on the frontiers of Travancore, which the Rajah had lately purchased from the Dutch; and about a wall which he had built along the northern boundary of his kingdom, and which extended for about thirty miles from the Anamullay mountains to the sea. Quarrels with the Rajah of Travancore.

At the end of 1789, Tippoo appeared before this fortified wall with a large force. He made an ineffectual attempt to carry it by assault. He then attempted to enter the Rajah's territories by a mountain path, which had been discovered at a little dis- Attack on the Travancore lines.
Dec. 29th, 1789.

CHAP. XII. tance from the place where he was encamped. The
 A. D. 1789. slight resistance offered in the first instance was
 overcome; and, after ordering part of the wall to
 be thrown down so as to afford an easier entrance
 to his troops, he advanced along the summit towards
 the quarter where the main portion of his army
 lay. He was soon stopped. A few Hindus, in a
 small tower, repulsed the numbers who were
 advancing with him by a few rounds of grapeshot.
 A panic seized the Mussulmans. They turned and
 fled in confusion, bearing the Sultan and his train
 along with them in their flight. According to his
 orders, the wall had, in one place, been broken
 down, and a gap made, into which the frightened
 fugitives fell by hundreds; the front ranks being
 unable to stop on account of those who, ignorant
 of the awful pitfall, urged them on from the rear.

Tippoo's nar-
 row escape.

The Sultan himself had a narrow escape. The
 gap had been partly filled by the still living bodies
 of his soldiers; and a few attendants carried him
 over the writhing road. Very angry at this repulse,
 he determined to remain before the wall, until he
 could receive from Seringapatam a number of guns
 sufficient to ensure success.

Alliance with
 Mahrattas
 and the Nizam.
 June 1st and
 July 4th, 1790.

This unprovoked attack on the country of one of
 their allies, was the cause of war with the English.
 An English army was equipped for the field, and
 placed under the command of General Medows, the
 Governor of Madras, and close alliances were form-
 ed with the Peishwa and the Nizam. To the last
 Lord Cornwallis tried to preserve peace; but Tippoo

treated his endeavours as signs of fear, and he was obliged, though against his will, to enter into war. CHAP. XII.
A. D. 1790.

Meanwhile Tippoo had destroyed the Travancore wall, had entered the Rajah's dominions, and carried into them all the horrors that the most savage mind could imagine; but, when he heard of the English preparations for war, he returned to Seringapatam, to prepare for a severer contest and a stronger foe. * Invasion of Travancore. May 7th.

The war began by the capture of the enemy's fortresses in the low country surrounding Coimbatore. Early in September Tippoo quitted Seringapatam, and, advancing against the English by the Guzalhutty Pass, attacked a detachment which had been stationed at the foot of the ghaut, and by which he was repulsed with considerable loss, though the detachment had subsequently to retire. The English General was very desirous to bring him to a battle; but he would not allow himself to be drawn into one: and the rest of the campaign was passed in continued marching and counter-marching in pursuit. Commencement of the war.

But the war was to be carried on in a different manner. Lord Cornwallis came from Calcutta to command the army in person, and arranged another method of attack. His first object was to take Bangalore, the second city in Mysore. Both the pettah and the fort were gallantly carried by storm. Lord Cornwallis's arrival at Madras. Dec. 12th.

From Bangalore he advanced straight to Seringapatam. Tippoo was filled with fear. He fully expected that his favourite city would be taken, and he effaced every evidence which it contained of his bitter hatred to the English. Insulting pic- Mar. 21st, 1791. Advance on Seringapatam.

CHAP. XII. tures, of which there were many in the town, were
 A. D. 1791. obliterated; foul words were wiped from the walls;
 * and the prisoners were cruelly murdered, lest reports of his barbarities should reach an English ear.

The English
 army falls back.
 May 26th.

The march to Seringapatam was very slow, chiefly owing to the fewness and feebleness of the bullocks which were employed to drag the guns.

Battle of Ari-
 kern.

May 15th.

At length the army arrived within sight of the city, and Tippoo's troops, which had been drawn up before it, were thoroughly defeated. But just as victory was in his grasp, Lord Cornwallis was compelled to retreat: sickness and famine were in his camp, and he was, consequently, obliged to turn his back upon the fortress which he had marked for his own.

Occurrences
 on the Western
 Coast.

There had also been military operations in another quarter. Colonel Hartley, and, after him, General Abercromby, had been fighting on the Western Coast; and they were joined by the brave Rajah of Coorg, and many of his subjects who had been hitherto compelled to hide themselves on account of Tippoo's cruelties, and were now eager for revenge.

Capture of
 Nundidroog.
 Oct. 19th.

After the retreat from Seringapatam, Lord Cornwallis returned to Bangalore, where he remained to prepare for a second attack on the capital. During this season of comparative inaction, he occupied the army in taking many of the surrounding hill-forts, which the inhabitants of Mysore imagined to be impregnable. The most formidable was Nundidroog, which was built on the summit of a steep granite rock. For three weeks a cannonade

was kept up, until two practicable breaches had been made; and through these breaches the English soldiers climbed. Rocks were rolled down upon them. Every means of resistance was used. But all danger and difficulty were set at nought: and the hearts of the English were cheered by seeing their flag float upon the walls, from which many of their captive countrymen had been thrown by the orders of the monster who sat upon the throne of Mysore.

CHAP. XII

A. D. 1791

Fresh men and supplies arrived; and Lord Cornwallis once more moved towards the capital. He was joined by the Nizam's troops and the Mahrattas, and General Abercromby was to advance from the Western Coast to meet him.

Second
vance to Ser-
ingapatam.

Jan. 1792.

On the 5th of February 1792, he appeared again before Seringapatam. Some hard fighting took place; but the English were successful, and Tippoo was obliged to cross the Cauvery, and to retire into the town, which is situated on a small island formed by two branches of that river. He made one or two desperate efforts to free himself; but they were all in vain.

The siege.
From 18th
24th Feb.

The preparations for the cannonade were nearly completed; the trenches were dug; the guns laid; and the soldiers were longing for the assault; when orders were given that the siege should be discontinued. Tippoo, thoroughly frightened, had asked for peace.

Cessation
the siege.
Feb. 24th.

Lord Cornwallis informed him of the terms on which it could be obtained: half his kingdom was to be given up to the allies; a large sum of money

Conclusion
peace.
March 18th

CHAP. XII. was to be paid for the expenses of the war; all the
A. D. 1792. prisoners were to be restored; and two of his sons
surrendered as hostages, until the conditions of the
treaty should be fulfilled. When Tippoo received
the letter containing these terms, he assembled his
chief officers in the great mosque of the town, told
them what he had read, and asked them whether
their voices were raised for peace or war. Devoted
as they were to their Sultan, they were obliged to
say, though with tears in their eyes, that peace was
best. Then Tippoo yielded. His sons were sent to
the English camp; the terms of the English com-
mander were accepted; and a treaty of peace was
finally concluded on the 18th of March. After
everything had been settled, the conquering army
returned to Madras, and, for a time, the tyrant of
Mysore was tamed.

181. A. D. 1793. The French possessions in India were taken, without any resistance being offered, upon the declaration of war with that nation. They had been restored at the conclusion of the last war: but the power of the French in India had been effectually crushed, and no attempt at recapture was made, as they had, at that time, employment enough for their arms in Europe. French officers were, however, in the service of native princes, whose armies they disciplined and drilled; they still entertained the idea of reviving their country's influence; and, by their intrigues and military knowledge, occasioned great embarrassment to the English cause.

Capture of the
French settle-
ments.

Aug. 1793.

The French possessions in India were taken, without any resistance being offered, upon the declaration of war with that nation. They had been restored at the conclusion of the last war: but the power of the French in India had been effectually crushed, and no attempt at recapture was made, as they had, at that time, employment enough for their arms in Europe. French officers were, however, in the service of native princes, whose armies they disciplined and drilled; they still entertained the idea of reviving their country's influence; and, by their intrigues and military knowledge, occasioned great embarrassment to the English cause.

Revenue sys-
tem.

Lord Cornwallis will be chiefly remembered for his administration in Bengal. He was the principal promoter of that mode of receiving the land revenue, which is known by the name of the Zemindary system. There are three methods of collecting this tax. One is the Zemindary system, by which large landholders are made individually responsible for the revenue of certain tracts of country; another is the village system, by which the inhabitants of each separate village are answerable for the rent of the land; and the third is the Ryotwary system, under which the settlement is made with each individual cultivator. These are the three modes of collecting revenue in India at the present time. Lord Cornwallis adopted the first for Bengal, and likewise reformed

the administration of justice, and the principal regulations for the revenue and judicial departments in that Presidency were passed in his days. CHAP. XIII.
A. D. 1793.

The Ryotwary system was adopted at Madras. It was begun under Colonel Read, who had charge of part of the territory taken from Tippoo Sultan in the war which has just been related; it was upheld by Colonel, afterwards Sir Thomas, Munro, who showed how beneficial it could be made to the people; and it is, at the present time, the principal system of revenue in Southern India. Ryotwary system.

Lord Cornwallis was succeeded by Sir John Shore, a distinguished civilian, who afterwards became Lord Teignmouth. Sir John Shore was eminently a peace governor; but the measures which he took to preserve the English dominions from war were neither for the welfare of India, nor for the honour of the English name. Sir John Shore becomes Governor-General.
Aug. 1793.

The Mahrattas were preparing to invade the country of the Nizam; but the Governor-General refrained from affording assistance to the latter, although he was in alliance with the English, and the native princes, who had admired the manner in which the English had upheld the cause of the Rajah of Travancore, because he was an ally, were disappointed at finding that they could not always depend upon the English alliance. The Mahrattas invaded the Nizam's country, as they had threatened; triumphed over his army at Kurdla; and forced him to an ignominious treaty with them. The Mahrattas attack the Nizam.

Battle and treaty of Kurdla.
Mar. 11th. and 12th, 1795.

CHAP. XIII. to cede a large portion of his dominions; to pay a considerable amount of treasure; and to surrender his prime minister, as a hostage for the faithful performance of these conditions.

Temporary
withdrawal of
the subsidiary
force.

The Nizam, irritated at the Governor-General's refusal to afford him aid, requested that the English force which was stationed at Secunderabad might be withdrawn, and showed every encouragement and favour to the French officers who were at his Court.

Death of Ma-
homed Ali.
Oct. 13th.

At the same time changes took place in the Carnatic: Mahomed Ali, the old ally of the English, died in October 1795, at the advanced age of seventy-eight, and was succeeded by his eldest son, Omdut-ul-Omrah. Lord Hobart, the Governor of Madras, was desirous of receiving from the new sovereign the cession of a portion of his dominions, which had, for several years, been impoverished and misgoverned on account of the debts and mismanagement of the late Nabob, who had been constantly surrounded by usurers and unworthy counsellors, both native and European. The subject was the cause of disputes between the Government of Madras and Bengal, and consequently no change was, at this time, effected in the management of the Carnatic.

Disputed suc-
cession in Oude.
A. D. 1797.

There were also disputes in the north. Asoph-ud-Dowlah, the Nabob of Oude, died in 1797, and was succeeded by his reputed son, Mirza Ali. The Governor-General at first acknowledged Mirza Ali as Nabob; but there were so many complaints of his unpopularity, and so many representations against his claims to the throne on the ground of his not being the late Nabob's son, that Sir John

Shore himself visited Oude to settle the matter. CHAP. XIII.
 Mirza, or, as he was generally called, Vizier Ali, A. D. 1798.
 was eventually deposed, and Saadut Ali, a brother Vizier Ali de-
 of the late Nabob, was placed upon the throne. throned.
 After these events, the dethroned Nabob resided at Jan. 21st.
 Benares.

But a Governor-General of a very different cha- Arrival of Lord
 racter was on his way from England. In 1798, Mornington.
 Lord Mornington, who afterwards became Marquis May 17th.
 Wellesley, arrived in India. He at once saw that
 the peace which then prevailed was hollow and
 unsatisfactory, and that the influence of the Eng-
 lish at the native courts was rapidly declining.

Lord Mornington immediately applied himself to New treaty
 remedy these evils. The principal power with whom with the Nizam.
 he entered into negotiation was the Nizam. He Sept. 1st.
 persuaded that prince to dismiss his French officers,
 to look up to the English alone, and to join heartily
 in alliance with them. The English subsidiary
 force returned to Secunderabad according to the
 provisions of a new treaty entered into with the
 Nizam; the brigade which had been raised and
 commanded by the French was surrounded and
 disarmed; and the French officers were conveyed
 to Calcutta as prisoners of war.

But a harder task than negotiation remained to Tippoo Sul-
 be performed. The Tiger of Mysore, still unhum- tan's prepara-
 bled, insolent, and mad, was crouching for his last tions for war.
 fatal bound. Tippoo Sultan was preparing for war.
 He was surrounded by Frenchmen, who gave him
 the assistance of their military knowledge; he was
 in correspondence with their great leader, Napoleon;

CHAP. XIII. he was improving his army; he was increasing the
 A. D. 1798. strength of Seringapatam; and he was striving in every way to gain the means wherewith to struggle successfully against his still hated enemies.

Assembling
 of the English
 forces.
 Feb. 3rd, 1799.

Fully aware of these proceedings, Lord Mornington also prepared for war, went to Madras to superintend the arrangements for the campaign, and exerted himself heartily in equipping the fine army which was assembling for the invasion of Mysore. More than 20,000 men were at Vellore, and they were joined on the march by 16,000 more from the territories of the Nizam. The latter were under the command of Colonel Arthur Wellesley, afterwards the Duke of Wellington, who commanded the English army in Portugal and Spain, and subsequently became England's most illustrious general. A small army was also sent from Bombay to the Western Coast: and the entire force was placed under the command of General Harris.

Tippoo is twice
 defeated.
 March 6th and
 7th.

The campaign was short. Slowly, but surely, the two forces marched towards Seringapatam. Tippoo first turned towards the west. At a place, called Seedasere, his army was beaten by General Stuart, who commanded the army from Bombay. Repulsed in that quarter, he proceeded to face his foes in the east. He attempted to stop General Harris's advance; but was thoroughly defeated, on a battle-field of his own choosing, at Malvelly.

Advance
 of the English
 to the capital.

Tippoo, though defeated in both these engagements, still endeavoured to stay the march of the English, and would willingly have fought another

battle ; but, while he was watching for them along the route which Lord Cornwallis had adopted; he heard that they had crossed the Cauvery at a ford some distance down the river, and were in full advance for Seringapatam by another road. Back he immediately turned to guard his favourite fortress; and, after some hard fighting, during which an English detachment was one evening driven back, he was compelled to retreat into the fort.

CHAP. XI.
A. D. 179

In a short time the town was regularly invested, and General Stuart's force joined the main army. The siege continued for a month. At length a practicable breach was made, and orders were given for the assault. The soldiers were told to lie down in the trenches, until the signal was given. Many a heart beat high : but not with fear. They were exulting in the thought that the man who had treated their captive countrymen with every kind of insult, was now within their reach, and that their hands were raised to strike him down.

Siege of Seringapatam.
From A.
5th to May.

It was noon. All was silent in the town : there was no stir of life within ; and, in fancied safety, Tippoo lay in his royal palace, pretending to think that Englishmen dared not enter, and took no heed of his most favoured officers when they told him of the approaching danger. The blinding sun shone down with its fiercest heat ; most of the garrison were deep in their midday slumber ; the green flag flapped lazily from the battlements : when General Baird, who was to lead the soldiers

The assault.
May 4th.

CHAP. XIII. through the breach, stepped out from the entrench-
 A. D. 1799. ments, and, waving his sword, gave the signal
 to advance. "Follow me, lads!" he cried, "and
 prove yourselves worthy of the name of British
 soldiers!" The men pressed towards the town.
 The alarmed garrison hastened to defend the walls,
 a cry spread through the city, and even the Sultan
 himself rushed to the defence. A cross-fire was
 immediately opened upon the assailants; but in
 seven minutes they had passed the sandy bed of
 the river, and, desperately fighting their way
 upward, had placed the red flag of England on the
 ramparts.

The triumph. The first wall was thus cleared: and, as it had
 been arranged before the assault, the soldiers divid-
 ed, half of them going to the right hand, and half
 to the left, to meet again on the eastern side.
 Those on the right, or southern, side, were easily
 victorious: but sterner work was before the others.
 When they had advanced about half way, they
 met with desperate resistance. The Sultan was
 there; and his followers fought with the madness
 of wounded tigers. They grappled hand to hand
 with the English; but were driven back with
 clabbed muskets or bayonet thrusts.

Death of Tippos. When the Sultan saw that all was lost, he at-
 tempted to return to his palace, and, on his way to
 it, he passed through a low, dark gateway, where
 the men of each side were fighting hard. He was
 wounded, and faint with loss of blood. His attend-
 ants begged him to proclaim his rank, that his life
 might be spared; but he either feared or disdained

to do so, and was still struggling on, when an English soldier gave him a mortal wound, and he sank down to die amidst the foul mass of the dead, and dying, and mutilated, in that horrible gateway.

The whole town was now in the possession of the English, and order was soon restored by the admirable arrangements of Colonel Wellesley, who relieved General Baird after the assault. Search was made for Tippoo, and, after a long time, his body was found in the place where he had died, but so changed that it was scarcely known. It was buried by the conquerors in the tomb which he had raised to his father.

Restoration of order.

The leader having fallen, there was no farther resistance. The war was at an end. Seringapatam was kept by the conquerors : and the remainder of Tippoo's dominions was divided between the English, the Nizam, and the Rajah, to whom the kingdom of Mysore was given. The Rajah was a child of tender age; but he was of the ancient dynasty of Mysore kings, and was, in consequence, raised to the throne which his ancestors had held.

Partition of the conquered country.

Colonel Wellesley was appointed to bring the restored realm into order, and well and nobly did he perform his task. The people were happy; roads, tanks, and bridges were constructed; and many from other parts of India came to live in Mysore, affording the best testimony to its good government and prosperity.

Colonel Wellesley's government of Mysore.

The traveller may to this day see a memorial

CHAP. XIII. of that time in a bridge at Seringapatam, which
A. D. 1799. still bears the name of Wellesley. Not far from

Present aspect
of Seringapatam.

are relics of the reign of tyranny which had just
passed away. There is Tippoo's tomb, with its
delicate tracery and graceful columns; his palace
now a mart for sandalwood; and his garden house
fast falling to decay. The broken cannon lie use-
lessly about the town; and the cannon balls are
stored in heaps, round which the tendrils of a
creeper twine, the vivid green of its leaves con-
trasting beautifully with the rusty red of the stone
—a happy emblem of the time, when the sound of
warfare shall be heard again no more.

CHAPTER XIV.

WAR WITH THE MAHRATTAS.

FROM A. D. 1799 TO A. D. 1803.

Arrangements with the Nizam—The English take possession of the Carnatic—Threatened invasion of Zemaun Shah—Vizier Ali—Insurrection at Benares—Murder of Mr. Cherry—Mr. Davis's gallantry—Arrangements with regard to Oude—Disputes among the Mahrattas—Scindia and Holkar—Treaty of Bassein—War against Scindia and the Rajah of Berar—General Wellesley's advance on Poona—Marches after the enemy—Description of the Mahratta encampment—Battle of Assaye—General Lake's advance—Capture of Alighur—Battle of Delhi—Surrender of French officers—Release of the Emperor Shah Alum—Battle of Laswarce—Suspicious behaviour of Scindia—Battle of Argaum—Capture of Garvilghur—Conclusion of peace.

AFTER the conquest of Mysore fresh territories were added to the English possessions. A subsidiary force had, for many years, been stationed at Secunderabad for the support of the Nizam, who had agreed to pay a sum of money for its maintenance: but the payment had, of late, been very irregular; and the Governor-General now entered into a treaty with that prince, the object of which was to obtain a tract of land, in exchange for this allowance, in order that the compensation might be

CHAP. XIV. rendered permanent and secure. The Nizam as A. D. 1761. consented to this arrangement; and gave up, for the re-
 fresh ¹⁷⁶⁷ with the Nizam. quired purpose, the districts which he had received
 Oct. 1761. after the fall of Seringapatam, and which are still known by the name of "The Ceded Districts."

The British The dominions of the Nabob of the Carnatic
 take possession of the Carnatic. were also surrendered to the English. The reign-
 July 21st. ing Nabob was Omdut-ul-Omrah, the eldest son of Mahomed Ali, who owed his throne entirely to their exertions. It was discovered that he had entered into a treasonous correspondence with Tippoo, during the last Mysore war; and his country was terribly misgoverned. The Court of Directors and the Home Government, therefore, concurred with the Governor-General and the Governor of Madras as to the propriety of taking from him the territories which he managed so ill. But before the arrangements for this proceeding were concluded, the Nabob was on his death-bed, and it was thought proper not to inform him of them. After his death, however, the throne was offered to his reputed son upon the condition that the government of the country should be placed in the hands of the English. But that prince would not accept the proffered terms, and Azeez-ul-Dowla, another grandson of Mahomed Ali, was made Nabob; a liberal allowance was bestowed upon him; and all the country, from Ongole to Cape Comorin, came under the rule of the East India Company.

Threatened
 invasion of Ze-
 maun Shah.

We must now turn our attention to the north of India, where more serious affairs had taken place,

For some time past, Zemaun Shah, King of Affghanistan, had been preparing for an invasion of India. He had been deterred, for a season, by troubles in his own country; but his intentions now appeared so evident, that the Governor-General determined to cross them altogether by persuading the King of Persia to attack Affghanistan. The Shah of Persia agreed to Lord Mornington's proposal; and the Affghan invasion was entirely frustrated.

These occurrences, however, occasioned a disturbance nearer home. In the last chapter we mentioned Sir John Shore's arrangements with regard to Oude. Vizier Ali, who had succeeded to the throne, and had, after a short reign, been deposed, hailed the idea of the Affghan invasion with delight; encouraged, as far as lay in his power, those who favoured it; and made preparations for assisting Zemaun Shah. When this conduct was made known to the Governor-General, he thought it advisable that Vizier Ali should be removed to a residence near Calcutta; but the idea of this change enraged the dethroned sovereign to such an extent that he deliberately murdered in cold blood Mr. Cherry, the Resident, and two other Englishmen. It is probable that all the English at Benares would have fallen victims to this unexpected treachery, if his infuriated followers had not first gone to the house of Mr. Davis, the Judge, who, seeing the excited mob approach, retired to the roof with his wife and children, and defended himself at the head of a narrow staircase, with only a small hunting spear in his hand, until soldiers from

Insurrection
at Benares.
Jan. 14th.

Mr. Davis's
gallantry.

CHAP. XIV. the English camp came to the rescue. After a slight
 A. D. 1792. resistance, Vizier Ali fled ; but he was, soon afterwards, taken prisoner, and kept in confinement during the remainder of his life.

Arrangements
 with regard to
 Oude,
 Nov. 16th, 1801

The reigning Nabob of Oude, who had lately expressed a desire to abdicate his throne, was induced to cede part of his territory to the English, by which arrangement his kingdom was rendered secure, as several of the ceded districts were situated to the west of Oude, and thus formed a barrier between it and foreign states ; and an alliance was concluded between him and the English, the latter binding themselves to defend him from all foreign and domestic enemies, and the Nabob agreeing to establish such a system of administration in his dominions, as should be conducive to the welfare of his subjects.

Battle between
 Scindia and Holkar.

Oct. 25th, 1802.

Peace now prevailed throughout India ; but it was not of long duration. The foes against whom the English were next to turn their arms, were the Mahrattas. Two powerful Mahratta chiefs had lately risen, who had taken all authority away from the Peishwa, in the same manner as the Peishwa had, in former years, taken all authority from the Rajah. Their names were Scindia and Holkar. There was at this time war between them. Holkar was in arms against Scindia and the Peishwa. He was victorious, and the poor, feeble Peishwa was obliged to flee from Poona, his capital, and to take refuge with the English, with whom he entered into an agreement, promising to maintain a subsidiary force in his country, to dismiss all European adventurers

Treaty of Bassein.

Dec. 31st.

from his Court, and to yield his claims to Surat and other places near Bombay which were then in their possession. On the 31st of December 1802, a treaty was signed at Bassein, and the offered alliance accepted.

CHAP. XIV.

A. D. 1802.

This treaty led to a war with Scindia, whose army was partially commanded by Frenchmen, and had been brought into a better state of discipline than any native force had yet attained. English troops were approaching the Mahratta country for the purpose of restoring the Peishwa to his capital; an army under General Lake, which was stationed in the provinces lately acquired from Oude, was ready to attack it on the north; and another, commanded by General Wellesley, was advancing from Mysore and Hyderabad. Holkar, not feeling himself strong enough to oppose them, had fled. General Wellesley marched rapidly to Poona to save it from the destruction which Holkar's adherents had threatened; and the Peishwa was replaced upon the throne in his former capital.

Restoration of
the Peishwa.

May 13th, 1803.

Scindia was now invited to join the English alliance. But he still kept aloof. His army was near the frontiers of the Nizam's country, and it appeared that he was desirous to join the Rajah of Berar, another powerful Mahratta chief, who had also felt himself aggrieved by the treaty of Bassein, and who was the first to declare against the English. Scindia attempted to gain time by sending evasive answers, and at last said that he did

War against
Scindia and the
Rajah of Berar.

of the treaty of Buxar, and that he would not accept the proposed alliance. The armies of the confederates were then marching toward the borders of the empire of the Nizam; and General Wellesley, who had left Poona, and taken Ahmednagar, one of Scindia's forts, quickly followed them, placed himself between their army and that city, and forced them to return.

In the middle of September, the two armies arrived within a short distance of each other, and the English General made arrangements for attacking the enemy with Colonel Stevenson, who commanded the Nizam's force. It was agreed that the latter should march round some hills to the west of their position, and that the General himself should proceed towards the east, both joining three days after, and giving battle to the enemy. But while thus separated from Colonel Stevenson, General Wellesley heard that Scindia's infantry was encamped quite close to him, on the banks of the Kaitna, a small river which flowed near. He resolved to attack them forthwith. He sent a messenger to Colonel Stevenson, ordering him to return as rapidly as possible, and then rode on with the cavalry to reconnoitre.

After a short ride, he reached some high ground, from which he saw the enemy in full force, cavalry and artillery as well as infantry, encamped on the opposite bank of the Kaitna. In their rear ran another small stream, named the Juah, which joined the Kaitna a little below the village of Assaye, and

formed with it an acute angle. The whole Mahratta host was spread out below him. Ninety cannon guarded the narrow stream; 50,000 trained warriors were behind them; and the tents of the camp were seen covering the plain for miles. The sounds of life came upward from that huge host in which every manner of workman had his store and every trade was carried on as regularly as in one of their own towns.

The English infantry had now come up. The General had made his arrangements. Numerous as the Mahrattas were they must be engaged, and the English were led forward as if to attack the enemy's front. They had not gone far, however, when they were ordered to march to their right, and to cross the river at a ford near its junction with the Juah. Under a tremendous fire they dashed through the water, ascended the steep banks, and formed on the plain beyond, with their infantry in advance and their cavalry in the rear. Rapidly as these movements had been made, they had been followed by the enemy, who as quickly changed his front. His left was now on Assaye, and his right on the Kaitna; and his cannon swept the triangular space on which the small brave English army had deployed. No time was to be lost. The enemy's artillery were as ten to one. The infantry were therefore ordered forward to capture the host-
 guns. Part of the line was broken by the dead
 Jy and the Mahratta horse attempted to charge
 through it, but they were driven back by the En-
 glish artillery. There was a fearful struggle at

CHAP. XIV
A. D. 1803

Battle of
Assaye.
Sep. 23rd

CHAP. XIV. the village of Assaye, which had been attacked
 A. D. 1803. owing to the misapprehension of an order. But the
 village was carried: the enemy's line gave way,
 and the cavalry charged again. Down fell horse
 and rider. Resistance was in vain. The wild,
 irregular Mahrattas were no match for the firm
 front of the English dragoons and their sepoy
 comrades. Once only they rallied: and some, who
 had been past as dead, rose up and fought again.
 But one more charge of those terrible horses drove
 them back. The retreat was quickened: the whole
 Mahratta army fled: and England had gained one
 of her most brilliant victories in the East.

Capture of
 Alighur.

Sep. 4th.

Meanwhile General Lake had advanced to Delhi.
 On his way he had taken the strong fort of Alighur;
 the result of which success was, that M. Perron,
 the most eminent Frenchman in Scindia's service,
 deserted the cause which he had long upheld.

Battle of Delhi.
 Sep. 11th.

The Mahrattas were encamped in a strong posi-
 tion near Delhi: a swamp was on each side of them,
 and the high ground on which they were located
 was defended by nearly a hundred pieces of can-
 non. The English came within sight of this for-
 midable array after a march of eighteen miles;
 but their General resolved to attack it at once. By
 a pretended flight, he drew the enemy from their
 strong position into the open country. When the
 Mahrattas saw the English cavalry, which was in
 advance, retreating, they rushed eagerly and wildly
 forward, fancying that they were to obtain an easy
 victory. As soon, however, as the horsemen reach-
 ed the infantry, they moved off to the right and to

the left; and the latter, passing on, drove the enemy back, charged up to the muzzles of the guns, and then, leaving room for the cavalry to gallop through their ranks, left them to follow the beaten foe.

CHAP. 2
—8
A. D. 1

Several Frenchmen surrendered after this battle, and no French officer of note remained in the enemy's camp—the Mahrattas were left to fight their battles alone. The city of Delhi was taken out of their power, and Shah Alum, the poor old Emperor, who had years ago caused so much alarm in Bengal, was released from a cruel bondage, during which he had been ill-treated by several captors in succession, had been half-starved, and eventually deprived of sight.

Surrender of the French
rescue of Alum.

General Lake then proceeded to Agra, which he captured; but another large army, called the "Invincibles of the Deekan," was advancing towards the city of Delhi, and he immediately retraced his steps to encounter it. As he drew near, he felt so impatient to come within sight of the enemy, that he left the infantry with orders to follow, and rode on rapidly with his cavalry alone. He came up with the Mahrattas at a village called Laswarce, where a brilliant cavalry action took place. The enemy appeared to be in retreat, as the English approached, and General Lake, therefore, ordered the few men who were with him to charge. Though it appeared like riding to certain death, there was no hesitation. At the sound of the bugle, and at the call of duty, those brave men rode on, as others have done since: dashed through the awful fire; and fought boldly among the thick masses of their

Battle of Laswarce.
Nov. 1st

to save life, and to give his tired soldiers rest, agreed to their proposal, and gave them an hour to consider. The hour passed away, and there was no movement, no sign of retreat. And now the real battle began. A column of English infantry led the way, and were soon in the midst of the fire. Part of the line held back, and the King's 76th, some of the 12th and the 16th B. N. I. were left alone, to march on bravely through the shot and shell, and to repulse in charge from the Mahratta horse. "This handful of heroes," as General Lake called them, fought nobly; but they were cut off from the others, and it was necessary to help them. The dragons were ordered to the front. As they rode by, they were received with cheers from the 76th, and, echoing back their comrades' hurrahs, they galloped through the Mahratta forces and beat them off. Then came the advance of the whole English line. The General put himself at their head. His horse was shot under him, and, as he was mounting another, his son was struck down by his side. But he could not stay to grieve or to assist, for the long line of English soldiers were pressing forward with the bayonet. Foot to foot, and hand to hand, the Mahrattas fought desperately; but they were driven back, although they did not cease the struggle, until every one of their guns

had been taken. After this battle, Scindia's army in the north existed only in name. CHAP. XIV.
A. D. 1803.

In the south, General Wellesley had followed up the victory of Assaye by sharp and rapid movements. Scindia pretended to desire peace, and a truce was made with him; but the Rajah of Berar was still in the field, and Scindia was, in reality, making as much delay as possible to enable reinforcements to come up to him. Advancing rapidly, General Wellesley met the Rajah's forces, with which a number of Scindia's were also found, at Argaum in the province of Berar. There was hardly half an hour of daylight left: but there was time enough to beat the enemy. The battle was a straightforward one. The steady advance of English infantry carried all before them. A few of the sepoys, who had fought courageously at Assaye, wavered under the enemy's fire; but they soon rallied, and, throughout the remainder of the day, fought as heartily as the rest. The moon arose that evening on the Mahratta forces in full retreat, and enabled the English cavalry to pursue them for several miles.

Scindia's suspicious behaviour.

Battle of Argaum.
Nov. 29th.

But the enemy still held out. The battle of Argaum was succeeded by the capture of a strong fort named Gawilghur, after a severe march over steep mountains and through almost impracticable ravines. The Rajput commandant fought bravely, but the garrison did not follow his example, and the fort was taken with less trouble than the strength of its position warranted.

Capture of Gawilghur.
Dec. 15th.

CHAP. XIV. After the fall of this stronghold, the Rajah of
 A. D. 1763. Berar asked for peace, which was granted to him
 upon his promising to cede the province of Cntlack,
 and to dismiss all European adventurers from his
 service. A large portion of territory was also ceded
 to the Nizam, who had been a faithful ally of the
 English throughout the war.

Scindia with Seindia also yielded. He ceded the tract of
 country situated between the rivers Jumna and
 Gauges, which had lately been held by French offi-
 cers; renounced all claims upon the English Go-
 vernment and their allies, the Nizam, the Guico-
 war, and the Peishwa; and to submit any dispute
 which he might have with the Peishwa to the
 decision of the English Government. The Mah-
 ratta war was thus brought to a close. It had
 lasted only five months: but in that short time
 many a hard-fought battle had taken place, and
 many a victory had been added to the battle-roll
 of England.

CHAPTER XV.

ANOTHER WAR WITH THE MAHRATTAS.

FROM A. D. 1804 TO A. D. 1806.

Holkar's suspicious conduct during the war—His insolent message to General Lake—General Lake's army set in motion—Pursuit after Holkar—Return of the English army—Col. Monson's disastrous retreat—Defence of Delhi—The English army in two divisions pursues Holkar—The cavalry defeat him near Furruckabad—The infantry at Deeg—Favourable operations in the west—Capture of Deeg—Siege of Bhurtpore—Every assault repulsed—Amcer Khan—The Rajah of Bhurtpore yields—Alliance between Holkar and Scindia—Marquis Cornwallis returns to India—His death—Sir George Barlow becomes Governor-General—Fresh treaty with Scindia—Holkar flees to the Punjab—Pursuit after him—A treaty of peace concluded—The English abandon their allies.

DANGER was still to be expected from the Mahrattas. During the war which had just been concluded, the conduct of Holkar had been very suspicious. He seemed at first inclined to assist Scindia and the Rajah of Berar, but he refrained from doing so. The rapid victories of the English appear

CHAP. XV. to have filled him with dismay, and he remained
 A. D. 1804. inactive until those chieftains had been defeated. Then, however, he began to show what his intentions really were. He wrote to several native princes to rouse them against the English, and he plundered the territories of several English allies.

Holkar's insolent behaviour.

As these proceedings could not be permitted without remonstrance, General Lake wrote to inform him that such acts could not be tolerated, and required him to withdraw his marauding army from the frontier of the British territory. Holkar's answer was full of insolence. He professed to desire peace, but required the English to give him several rich provinces; to permit his demanding chont, or a tax from the native rulers that their countries might not be plundered; and to make a treaty with him similar to the one which had lately been concluded with Scindia.

Pursuit after Holkar.

This was as much as asking for war. General Lake's army was immediately set in motion; and Colonel Murray was ordered to march from Guzerat towards Oojein. Holkar was, at this time, employed in plundering the territory of the Rajah of Jypore, an ally of the English; but General Lake sent forward a detachment under Colonel Monson for the protection of that prince, and Holkar retired towards the south. The English, after capturing the fortress of Tonk Rampura, continued the pursuit. Holkar, however, retreated so rapidly that they could not overtake him; and the troops suffered severely from the heat, the fatigue of the march, and want of provisions. Thinking

therefore, that the detachment under Colonel Monson was strong enough to keep Holkar in check, and desirous of sparing his men, General Lake returned with his force towards Cawnpore. But whatever were the trials of the soldiers before, they were now increased a thousand-fold. The march back was most disastrous. Hundreds dropped down on the wayside to die, overcome by the hot winds which raged all day, by thirst, and by fatigue.

CHAP. XV.

A. D. 1801.

Meanwhile some irregular cavalry had attacked a party of the enemy with success, and afterwards joined Colonel Monson's troops : and Amcer Khan, a chieftain in the service of Holkar, had treacherously fallen upon some sepoy and artillery, who had concluded a truce with the commander of a fort which they were besieging, on the promise of its surrender ; but he was afterwards beaten by a small party of English sepoy.

Slight success
es.

While General Lake was retiring, Colonel Monson continued his southward march, with the intention of joining Colonel Murray, who was advancing from the opposite direction. But as he proceeded, he found more and more difficulty in procuring supplies for his men ; he heard that Colonel Murray had fallen back ; and he imagined* that Holkar was too weak or too dispirited to attempt any offensive movement. He resolved, therefore, to retreat ; and, leaving the irregular cavalry under Lieutenant Lucan at the place of his encampment, with orders to follow in half an hour, and to inform him of the enemy's movements, he turned his back on Holkar.

Col. Monson's
advance.

CHAP. XV. It was an error in judgment only, for Colonel Mon-
 A. D. 1804. son himself was a brave man and a devoted soldier.

CHAP. XV. We have already remarked how disastrous a
 retreat before the Mahrattas always proved. Directly
 the enemy heard that Colonel Monson had com-
 menced his march, they hastened after him, attacked
 and overwhelmed the small party of cavalry which
 had been left behind, and pursued the remainder of
 the detachment, which had reached the Mokundra
 Pass, a steep and difficult defile between Kota and
 Neemuch. Here they attacked the retreating
 troops on almost every side, but the small party of
 English stood their ground firmly, and beat them
 off. Colonel Monson had at first intended only to
 retreat as far as the Mokundra Pass. Fearing, how-
 ever, that the enemy might intercept him, he
 retired to Kota, the capital of a professedly friendly
 Rajah, who nevertheless refused to admit him
 within the walls of the town. Backward marched
 the detachment in the greatest distress: the streams
 were overflowing their banks; the troops were in
 want of food; the guns had to be spiked and left
 behind; and the enemy's cavalry made frequent
 attacks. Yet no impression could be effected on it;
 whenever there was any fighting, success was
 always on the side of the English. But treachery
 was at work. Some of the native officers entered
 into correspondence with the enemy, and two com-
 panies of sepoy and some irregular cavalry went
 over to Holkar. As Colonel Monson drew near a
 position of safety, one more desperate attempt was

made to overcome him, but it was repulsed. After that action, however, all order was lost, the firm front shewn against danger was no more seen, and every one escaped, as best he could, to Agra, where the last straggler arrived on the 31st of August, about two months after the first backward step had been taken.

But the year was not to close without retrieving this disaster. General Lake's army was speedily reassembled, and by the 22nd of September it was at Agra, ready to take the field. Holkar had advanced to Muttra, a little higher up the Jumna, and, leaving his cavalry behind, sent forward his infantry and guns to capture Delhi. But he was completely baffled. The Resident, Colonel Ochterlony, and Colonel Burns placed the city in the best state of defence that they could adopt, and, with only a few native troops, defended it for eight days against Holkar's numerous army. Part of the garrison mutinied, but the remainder fought gloriously; and the courage shewn at Delhi is deserving of greater praise than any other incident in the war.

CHAP. XV.
A. D. 1804.
Reassembling of the English army.

Spirited defence of Delhi.
From Oct. 8th to 15th.

Defeated at Delhi, Holkar proceeded to ravage the surrounding country. General Lake, therefore, dividing his army into two portions, gave the command of the infantry and foot artillery to General Fraser, with orders to bring Holkar's infantry to action; and, taking with him the greater part of the cavalry and the horse artillery, started in pursuit of Holkar, who, with his cavalry, was busily

Division of the English army into two portions.

CHAP. XV. engaged in plunder and excess. The chase was long
 A. D. 1801. Holkar kept in continual motion; but the English
 cavalry closely followed him at every turn.

Defeat of Hol-
 kar's cavalry at
 Furruckabad,
 Nov. 18th.

At length, one evening, General Lake heard that the enemy was encamped near the city of Furruckabad, which was only 36 miles in advance. Although his men had just finished a long march, he ordered them to mount again. All night they rode on rapidly. The moon was shining; they were in high spirits at the thought of meeting their chief foe; they had just heard of a victory gained by their comrades; and the cool, crisp air kept off fatigue. In the grey of the morning, they came in sight of Holkar's camp, in which the horses were still standing at their pickets, and most of the men lay sleeping by their side. A round of grape shot told them that the English were coming; and, a few moments after, the English cavalry were riding through and through the startled camp. A few of the Mahrattas had found time to mount their horses, and to flee as quickly as possible; and among these was Holkar himself, who ran away among the first.

Battle of Deeg,
 Nov. 18th.

In the meantime, while General Lake was chasing Holkar's cavalry, General Fraser had destroyed his infantry. The English army came in sight of the Mahrattas on the 12th November, and found them encamped in a very strong position in the neighbourhood of Deeg. Their right was near a village built on rising ground; their left was close to the town; a large lake was in their rear; and a long swamp lay spread before their camp.

Very early on the following morning, the troops were led out to the attack. They were obliged to march some distance to the left to avoid the swamp. The King's 76th Regiment, which had highly distinguished itself before, was in advance. The fortified village was quickly carried; and the soldiers ran down from it to the first range of guns, and captured them. Other regiments hastened after the gallant 76th, and supported it. During the struggle at the second battery, General Fraser was mortally wounded, and Colonel Monson assumed the command. Part of the army staid behind to keep the enemy near the swamp in check: but the rest hastened forward; battery after battery, which appeared one after another for the space of two miles, had to be taken at the point of the bayonet. At length the last was stormed and carried, and the conquering soldiers found themselves close to Deeg, the guns of which were fired at them, and compelled them to retire. Meanwhile the enemy had regained the first range of cannon, and turned them against the English, but they were gallantly retaken by Captain Norford of the 76th at the head of only twenty-eight men. The troops who had taken the batteries, had now returned to drive off the enemy's forces near the swamp, which had hitherto been kept in check by the party left behind for that purpose; but as soon as they appeared, the Mahrattas fled, and many, in their headlong flight, were drowned in the morass. The victory was complete; and the remnant of Holkar's infantry, beaten and subdued, sought refuge behind the walls of Deeg.

CHAP. XV. After this engagement, Colonel Monson withdrew
 . D. 1804. to Muttra, a little to the east of Deeg, where he
 re-joined the cavalry under Lord Lake. Both divisions of the reunited army had done the work set before them, having beaten the enemy at different points, and completely dispersed Holkar's forces.

operations in the south, Colonel Wallace had taken Chandore and Jaulnah, and subdued all Holkar's possessions in the Deckan: and Colonel Murray, who had fallen back for a time, and had thus partly caused Colonel Monson's retreat, had taken Oojein, Indore, and the whole of the province of Malwa.

General Lake's army proceeded, in the next place, to the town and fort of Deeg, whither many of Holkar's troops had fled for refuge after the battle. Deeg belonged to the Rajah of Bhurtpore, who had been one of the first to seek an alliance with the English at the commencement of the war, and to whom very favourable terms had been granted. He had, however, assisted Holkar in many ways; it was ascertained that he had entered into correspondence with that chief; and, at the battle of Deeg, his men had fought against the English, his guns had fired on them, and his fortress had been a refuge to their foes. It was, therefore, necessary to punish his treachery. In the middle of December, the army appeared before the town. The enemy was posted within and around it, and had, on either side, erected several formidable batteries. In a few days a practicable breach was made: and three parties were formed to carry the place, one on the right to

take the batteries on the one side, another on the left to attack the fortifications on the other, and the third was the storming party. All were successful. The town was taken, and the fort was surrendered on the following day.

CHAP. XV.

A. D. 1804.

The Rajah's capital still remained to be captured, and preparations were made for the siege. Bhurtpore was a very strong place, eight miles in extent, enclosed by a high mud wall, and a broad, deep moat, and defended by a numerous and determined garrison. Many attempts were made to take it by assault; but all failed. The enemy fought desperately; they rolled down on the advancing columns large stones, jars of boiling oil, logs of wood, and every missile upon which they could lay their hands: the English soldiers fought as fiercely; they fixed their bayonets in the wall, and climbed up the dangerous stair, one here and there reaching the top, and placing the English flag on the ramparts, only to be cut down on the spot. On each occasion, however, they were obliged to retire. Some of the men who had fought bravely at Laswaree and Deeg, refused one day to advance, but, the next, retrieved their character by the most desperate valour. But all was in vain: no impression could be made on the thick mud walls of Bhurtpore.

Siege of Bhurtpore.

From Jan. 2nd to Feb. 22nd, 1805.

During this siege, Holkar, who was now too weak to do much damage himself, despatched Ameer Khan, one of his most savage retainers, to inflict as much mischief as possible on the neighbouring territories of the English, and thus to create a diversion in

Ameer Khan's marauding foray.

CHAP. XV. favour of the besieged. Gathering around him his
 A. D. 1805. wild horsemen, Ameer Khan invaded the Company's newly acquired possessions, leaving burning villages and trampled fields in his track. This incursion, however, did not affect the siege of Bhurtpore. The cavalry were sent after him ; and, chasing him hither and thither, over mountains and through valleys, across rivers and through dark forests, they came up with him, almost destroyed his marauding band, and returned in triumph to the English army, which was still encamped before the unconquered fort.

Peace with the
 Rajah of Bhurt-
 pore.

April 17th.

General Lake, finding that the place could not be taken by assault, resolved to turn the siege into a blockade. But the Rajah of Bhurtpore was weary of the war. He had undertaken it to help Holkar, and now that Holkar was powerless, he desired to desert his cause. New guns were daily received in the English camp to replace those which had become useless during the siege ; fresh supplies were coming in ; and there was no sign that General Lake would leave the place, until he had accomplished his object, although he had, for a time, abandoned his former quarters before the town. The Rajah, therefore, asked for peace, which was granted to him on better terms than he could have reasonably expected. He agreed to pay twenty lacs of rupees for the expenses of the war ; to restore some territory which the English had formerly given him ; and to leave the fortress of Deeg in their possession, until his fidelity should be fully proved.

Meanwhile Holkar had joined Scindia, who was

again prepared for war. There had been disputes between Scindia and the English, since the conclusion of the treaty which we have already mentioned; but his conduct had grown more and more suspicious since the failure at Bhurtpore. Released from the siege of that place, General Lake, who had recently been made a peer for his former services, was free to follow Holkar and his new ally, and, at the approach of the English, they both retreated.

CHAP. XV
A. D. 180
Advance
against Hol
and Scindia.
April 21st

At this juncture the Marquis Cornwallis arrived from England as Governor-General, with the full determination of following a different course of policy from that which had been pursued by the Marquis Wellesley. He had been instructed to make peace with Holkar, if he possibly could; but, as he was on his way to join Lord Lake he was taken ill, and died at Ghazipore near Benares. Sir George Barlow, the senior member of Council, succeeding to the post of Governor-General, proceeded to carry out the views of his predecessor, and entered into negotiations with Scindia and Holkar.

Return of L.
Cornwallis.
July 30th.

His death.
Oct. 5th.

Scindia immediately agreed to peace. Very favourable terms were granted to him; the treaty before made with him by General Wellesley was confirmed; the Fort of Gwalior was surrendered to him, with part of the territories of the Rana of Gohud, one of the ancient allies of the English; a pension was given him; and estates in the English possessions were bestowed upon his wife and daughter.

Peace w
Scindia.
Nov. 23rd

But Holkar was still up in arms, and had fled to the Punjab, in full expectation that the Sikhs and

Holkar flee
the Punjab.

CHAP. XV. Affghans would afford him help. Forces were sent
 A. D. 1805. to cut off his retreat; but he managed to out-
 manoeuvre them, and to reach the country of the
 Sikhs. Lord Lake's army was quickly in pursuit.
 It had reached the banks of the river Beas, the
 Sikhs had refused to aid Holkar, and that treacher-
 ous and dangerous enemy was in the power of the
 English, when Lord Lake was ordered to enter into
 treaty with him. The brave English conqueror had
 spoken firmly and decidedly against the new
 arrangements; but his voice was unheeded. That
 part of Holkar's territories which the English had
 subdued, was restored to him; he was allowed to
 return to them by an appointed route; and posses-
 sions to the north of the river Chumbal, which the
 English had at first reserved for themselves, were
 given up, thus honouring and enriching him, who
 had ever shewn himself a most unrelenting, bitter
 foe to England.

Peace with
 Holkar.
 Dec. 24th.

Sir George Bar-
 low's peace po-
 licy.

The unreasonable desire for peace which then
 prevailed, induced Sir George Barlow to act
 unwisely and unfairly. He fixed upon the river
 Jumna as the boundary line of the English terri-
 tories on the north; broke the alliance with most
 of the native states upon the other side of it;
 refused help to the Rajahs of Jypore and Boondce,
 both of whom had shown themselves true and faith-
 ful to the English cause, and had done every thing
 to uphold it during the war; left them to the
 revenge of Scindia and Holkar, although they had
 stronger claims to the support of the English
 Government than any other of the native prince

in the north ; and was only prevented from following the same selfish policy with regard to the Rajahs of Bhurtpore and Machery, by the stern remonstrance of Lord Lake, although the former had shewn in his conduct through the time of warfare a striking contrast to the loyal Rajah of Jypore. With one voice the best writers on Indian History, and foremost among them the officer by whom the treaties with Scindia and Holkar were concluded,* condemn the unstatesman-like, narrow, foolish policy which was then adopted. Peace was gained : but at a price far greater than that of the most protracted war ; for Englishmen ought always to count Honour dearer than their lives.

CHAP. XV.
A. D. 1806

* Sir John Malcolm.

CHAPTER XVI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF
SIR GEORGE BARLOW AND LORD MINTO.

FROM A. D. 1806 TO A. D. 1813.

Profound peace throughout British India—Mutiny at Vellore—Massacre of the European soldiers who were stationed there—The cavalry come from Arcot—Suppression of the mutiny—Causes of the disturbance—Treatment of the mutineers—Suppression of the mutiny in other places—Lord Minto becomes Governor-General—Sir George Barlow is appointed Governor of Madras—Departure from the peace policy—Occurrences at Poona and Hyderabad—Embassies to Persia and Cabul—Unpopularity of Sir George Barlow—The Tent Contract—Mutiny of the officers at Madras—Affair at Seringapatam—Return to duty—Restoration of peace and quiet—Expeditions against Java, Bourbon, and the Isle of France—Signs of approaching warfare—Disputes with the Goorkhas—Quarrel with the Burmese—Departure of Lord Minto.

THERE was now profound peace throughout the English possessions in India. Beyond them, however, there were continual wars and tumults : but

Sir George Barlow still adhered to the views which he had adopted, and which were urged upon him from England; he would not interfere with disputes between the native states; and he would not use the enormous power gained by the English for those high purposes for which it had been given. Rather he rejoiced at the thought, that the quarrels of the Mahratta chieftains would keep them from warfare with the English, and turn to the profit of the English Government. But although we must condemn Sir George Barlow's policy in this respect, we must praise the manner in which he used peace for the good of those directly under him in the province of Bengal.

CHAP. XVI.
A. D. 1806.

In the midst, however, of the quiet that prevailed, the dwellers in British India were startled by the news of an alarming outbreak near Madras. Very early in the morning of the 10th July 1806, while it was still dark, the sepoys stationed at Vellore, a town which is situated about eighty miles to the west of Fort St. George, arose and murdered the greater part of the European officers and soldiers who were residing in that place. Silently and secretly they assembled on the parade ground; marched to the barracks of the European soldiers; and, surrounding them, placed before the door a field-piece, with which they frequently fired upon the unarmed men within. The English soldiers could not return the fire, for they had no ammunition, and they were unable to charge out against their numerous foes. Some of the rebels had, in the meantime, gone to watch the houses of the officers, and to murder every one who

The mutiny of
Vellore.
July 10th.

CHAP. XVI.

[A. D. 1806.]

quitted them, and by these Colonel Fancourt, who commanded, was mortally wounded: others had proceeded to secure the powder magazine: and a third party had entered the houses of the English residents and slain all whom they had encountered. Soon after it was light, a few officers, who had bravely defended themselves in one of the houses, contrived to enter the barracks; led to the door the men who still remained unwounded, where they captured the gun; and, fighting their way out, reached the top of one of the gateways where they kept their adversaries at bay. The officers were killed in the struggle; and a serjeant named Brodie assumed command of the survivors.

Assistance
received from
Arcot.

But news of these events had been carried to Arcot, which was only nine miles off; and while brave Serjeant Brodie and his comrades were fighting desperately, there was seen in the distance a cloud of dust, which told them that help was near. It was a regiment of dragoons and the 7th native cavalry galloping to the rescue. Before them rode furiously a single horseman—the commander of the dragoons. He reached the gateway. A rope made of the soldiers' belts was let down to him. By help of this he clambered up the ramparts, where he put himself at the head of the soldiers; and led them on to one more charge against the murderers of their countrymen. Presently the dragoons came up with the galloper guns; battered in the gate of the fort; charged through and through the rebels; and did not put up their swords, until the blood of hundreds had flowed for the blood of those so foully slain.

Various causes contributed to this fearful mutiny. Orders had been given that the sepoys were to appear upon parade without any of the marks which Hindus wear upon their foreheads to indicate their caste; that they were to cut their beards and mustaches after one uniform fashion; and that they were to wear a turban which, they imagined, was like a European hat. Many supposed that these changes were ordered, because the Government wished to force them all to become Christians. This feeling was increased by the speeches and counsel of seditious men, who were willing to rouse them, by any means, against the English rule. But there was something further and deeper concealed under these things. The sons of Tippoo Sultan were in confinement at Vellore. They were treated kindly, and allowed to hold intercourse with many of the inhabitants of the town. Vellore was full of those who looked back with regret to the days of Mahomedan greatness in Mysore; of men who had been secretly preparing to raise the sons of Tippoo to their father's power; and of numerous beggars, dervishes, and fakeers, who had proceeded from man to man with false stories of English oppression and with pretended promises of assistance from Mahomedan states. The regiments at Vellore were principally composed of Mahomedans and of persons from Mysore, who eagerly listened to these idle tales. The green flag of Tippoo had been hoisted during the disturbance: and it seems certain that, even if the princes themselves did not incite the sepoys to rise in their behalf, the rebels entertained thoughts of raising

CHAP. XVI.

A. D. 1806.

Cause of the mutiny.

CHAP. XVI. again the Mahomedan dynasty, and, at the same
A. D. 1806. time, believed the absurd stories of the Government interfering with their religion.

Treatment of the mutineers. The sons of Tippoo were removed to Calcutta where they were kept under a mild restraint. The ringleaders in the rebellion were brought to trial: a few were executed; others were dismissed the service; and quiet again prevailed, although the feeling of confidence between the Madras sepoys and their officers which existed before the outbreak, was not restored for several months. The regulations about the sepoys' dress were altered.

Suppression of the mutiny in other places. Vellore, however, was not the only place where a mutinous spirit was shown. At Secunderabad, Wal-lajabad, Nundidroog, and other places, there were signs of rebellion; but it was averted by the firmness of some commanding officers, and by the good sense of others in not insisting upon the use of the turban which the sepoys disliked.

Arrival of Lord Minto. While the trials of the men that had been engaged in this outbreak were taking place, Lord Minto, who had a short time before been appointed Governor-General, landed at Madras, remained there a short time, and then proceeded to Calcutta. The Governor of Madras had returned to England, and Sir George Barlow succeeded him.

Departure from the peace policy. Lord Minto came to India firmly resolved to follow his predecessor's views with regard to the non-interference with native states, and to spend his time in the internal administration of the country; but, strong as his own wishes and the directions

from England on the subject were, he was obliged to depart from the course which had been lately followed. He found that not only the interests, but the safety, of the English possessions in India were in danger by refusing to give help where it was really needed. Ameer Khan, the robber-chief-tain whom we have already mentioned, relying upon the English withholding assistance, invaded the territories of the Rajah of Berar; but the Governor-General ordered an English force to oppose him, and he rapidly retreated to plunder in districts farther off.

Assistance was given to the Peishwa in bringing some of his unruly people into subjection: and the Governor-General also interfered with the internal affairs of another ally, and, contrary to the wishes of the Nizam, appointed as minister at the Court of Hyderabad a person whom he desired to see holding that station.

At this time fears were entertained by the English in India about the danger of French and Russian invasion through the mountainous countries to the north. Even now such fears have altogether died away; but at the time of which we are writing they were very strong. A splendid embassy was, therefore, sent to the King of Persia; but no satisfactory treaty could be concluded with him on account of the domestic troubles in that land. Another embassy had been sent to the Shah of Persia, but it was fruitless. Both these expeditions were

Transactions
at Poona and
Hyderabad.

CHAP. XVI. recting the imperfect knowledge of those countries
A. D. 1809. which Englishmen had previously possessed.

Unpopularity
of Sir G. Bar-
low at Madras.

Sir George Barlow, now Governor of Madras, was very unpopular at his new station. He had brought with him from Calcutta the principles of economy which the Court of Directors had urged upon him, when he was Governor-General; but although he was desirous of reducing the expenses of Government, even by unpopular measures, the principal act which brought upon him the dislike of the officers in the Madras army was effected under instructions from the Bengal Government. The commandants of regiments had been hitherto accustomed to receive an allowance for providing tents for their men. This was called the Tent Contract. It was now abolished; and this proceeding irritated the Madras officers. Another source of quarrel was, that the Commander-in-chief was not allowed a seat in Council.

The Tent Con-
tract.

Mutiny at Ma-
dras.

The discontent among the officers increased day by day. They brought serious charges against Colonel Munro, who had written the report about the Tent Contract, accusing him of false insinuations against the army: and, a short time afterwards, General Macdowall, the Commander-in-chief, annoyed at being excluded from a seat in Council, put Colonel Munro under arrest. There were thus two parties at Madras. The Governor was at the head of the one in favour of Colonel Munro: General Macdowall was the leader of the other. The Governor ordered the prisoner's release; and the Commander-in-chief, who was about

to retire from the service, unwillingly obeyed. After his departure for England, the Adjutant-General and the Deputy Adjutant-General were suspended, because they had published a General Order against Government, which the Commander-in-chief had written previous to his embarkation; and several commanding officers were also suspended, or removed from their commands, because they had signed memorials against the proceedings of Government. These proceedings increased the spirit of disaffection. It spread from the officers to the men. At Masulipatam there was open mutiny. At Seringapatam, the officers, annoyed by an appeal circulated by Government among the native officers and sepoys, openly encouraged their men in rebellion, and an engagement took place between a mutinous regiment, which was marching from Chittledroog to Seringapatam, and a body of faithful sepoys and European troops.

At Secunderabad also there was mutiny, but the officers at that station were happily soon recalled to a sense of duty. Colonel Close, the Resident at Poona, was sent to Secunderabad; and, though his counsel was at first disregarded, he succeeded afterwards in bringing matters to an amicable conclusion. The mutineers at Seringapatam and other places followed the example of their brethren at Secunderabad; and an address recording their feelings of penitence was sent to Lord Minto, who, at this time visited Madras, where his presence seemed needful. A few officers were dismissed; others were pardoned; and quiet again prevailed.

CHAP. XVI
A. D. 180

Return of t
officers to th
duty.

CHAPTER XVII.

WAR WITH NEPAUL.

FROM A. D. 1813 TO A. D. 1817.

Arrival of the Earl of Moira—The Goorkhas—They attack a small party of English on the frontier—Commencement of the Goorkha war—Arrangements for an invasion of Nepaul—Description of the country—Operations of the second division—Siege of Kalunga—Advance on Jytak—Failure of the third and fourth divisions—Success of the first division—Nalagerh abandoned—Temporary cessation of hostilities—Ramgerh abandoned—Attack on the heights of Maloun—Capture of Almora—The Nepaulese ask for peace—Terms of peace—Renewal of war—Sir David Ochterlony turns the Chiriaghati Pass—Battle of Makwanpur—Capture of Hariarpore—Conclusion of peace—Intrigues among the Mahrattas—The Pindarees—Description of their warfare—Foray into the Company's territories—Defeat of a Pindaree expedition—Preparations for extensive warfare.

THE next Governor-General was the Earl of Moira, who afterwards became the Marquis of Hastings. He landed at Calcutta on the 4th October 1813. Immediately after his arrival, he was oblig-

CHAP. XVII. burst open the gate : but the fire directed against them was so severe that they were obliged to retreat.

Death of General Gillespie.

Vexed at this disaster, the General, exclaiming that he would take the fort or lose his life in the attempt, put himself at the head of the King's 60th and a few dismounted dragoons, and led them towards the gate again. But when they came within reach of the enemy's fire, the 60th held back, and General Gillespie was shot while cheering them on. The party retreated a second time : and the officer who assumed the command of the division after General Gillespie's death, resolved to remain before Kalunga, until more guns could be brought to his assistance.

Abandonment of the fort.

As soon as the field-pieces were received, another storming party was led to the assault. They advanced with the bayonets, their ranks being unbroken, and charged through the breach which had been made : but, on entering the fort, they found the garrison assembled in an enclosed square ten feet below them, whence arrows, stones, and darts were discharged at them, without their losing the power to retaliate. They were finally obliged to retire with considerable loss. The General, however, detached the best of his men to the reinforcement, and joined another party consisting of three hundred of their countrymen, with whom they were defeated, in the open field by a small party of Mysore.

March 2d 1761.

The 2d.

Another General was appointed to lead the British forces into the fort of Mysore, which he attacked upon the 11th of April, but the Mysoreans

and was protected by several stockades. The garrison of Jytak depended for their supply of water on wells situated outside the fort; and these were defended by a strong stockade, which the General desired to take. For this purpose he despatched two detachments, with directions to march by different routes, but to attack the stockade simultaneously. By some mismanagement, however, one detachment engaged the Goorkhas long before the other, and was forced to retire; while the second, after repulsing the Goorkhas, who attacked it in large numbers, was obliged to return by order of the General.

CHAP. XVII.

A. D. 1814.

The divisions of the army which were acting in the east, were also unsuccessful. Several parties were attacked by the enemy and repulsed; and the campaign in that quarter was at first anything but creditable to the English arms.

Failure of the
third and fourth
divisions.

Disastrous, however, as these first encounters with the hardy mountaineers were in the greater number of the places attacked, the first division, under General Ochterlony, was victorious. In the west, where it was engaged, Amar Sing, the most celebrated of the Goorkha chiefs, commanded. The country was divided into three ranges of hills, which were separated from each other by deep valleys, and defended by several strong forts. On the first range was situated the fort of Nalagerh, on the second Ramgerh, on the third Maloun, and beyond these fortresses was situated Bilaspore, the capital of a Rajah, who was friendly to the Goorkhas and their cause. of these places were strengthened by the

Triumphs of
the first division.

CHAP. XVII. and ruggedness of the heights upon which they
 A. D. 1814. were built. The division reached the first range at
 the beginning of November. Guns were brought
 to bear upon the fort of Nalagerh, which the gar-
 rison, after a short defence, abandoned, thus enab-
 ling the invaders to advance without hindrance to
 Ramgerh. Finding that this fort could not be safely
 attacked in front, General Ochterlony moved to
 the enemy's left; gained a height upon the other
 side of the range, whence all the defences of the
 Goorkhas could be distinctly seen; and remained
 there for some time, employing himself in gaining a
 thorough knowledge of the country, until reinforce-
 ments should arrive. He had heard at that place
 of the reverses before Kalunga, and wished to be
 quite sure of success before he made any further
 attack.

March to Ma- As soon as his division had been strengthened,
 loun. he left a part of it before Ramgerh, and advanced
 with the remainder to Maloun, which movement
 threatened to cut off Amar Sing from all inter-
 course with his friends, if he remained in his
 present position. Amar Sing, being aware of his
 danger, withdrew the greater part of his troops
 to Maloun, where he was closely invested by the
 English commander. The Rajah of Bilaspore sur-
 rendered, and the Goorkha posts near the heights
 of Maloun were taken.

Attack on the General Ochterlony now resolved to attack these
 heights of Ma- heights. They were protected by two forts named
 loun. Surajgerh and Maloun, which were situated upon
 April 15th, 1815. the extreme right and left of the range, and were

connected by a line of stockades. The English were encamped on the other side of a mountain stream directly opposite to these heights, and had taken possession of a small fort named Ratangerh, upon a detached hill to the right of Maloun. There were also two unoccupied hills between Maloun and Surajgerh. General Ochterlony determined to gain these positions, and thus to cut off all communication between the two forts. The two parties sent to effect this enterprise were successful. The post near Maloun was very important; and Amar Sing, fully aware of its importance, made a desperate effort to recover it two days after it had been taken. The Goorkhas fought gallantly. Their chief was there, standing with his son near their standard, and cheering them on to the attack. They rushed upon the bayonets of the English, seized them with their hands, and wildly struck at their opponents over the muskets. Two small guns had been brought up the heights by the English; and, although these field-pieces created terrible havoc in their ranks, they returned to renew the struggle again and again. This hard fighting lasted for two hours. Help was at length brought to the English from the nearest detachment. A bayonet charge decided the day: and the Goorkhas retired to Maloun, carrying with them the corpse of the chief who had led them forward to that desperate attack.

CHAP. XVI.
A. D. 1815.

The garrison soon afterwards abandoned the fort, and gave themselves up as prisoners of war, for they were unable to persuade their leader to yield. Thus deserted by those who had hitherto fought so nobly

Surrender
the garrison.
May 8th.

CHAP. XVII. for him, Amar Sing surrendered the citadel, and
 A. D. 1815. was permitted to retire to Catmandoo. The cam-
 May 11th. paign in that quarter was at an end; and the fall
 of Maloun led to the surrender of Jytak, which
 the second division had for some time past been
 blockading.

Conquest of Kumaon. Meanwhile a small force had been successfully
 employed in the province of Kumaon. The Goor-
 khas were defeated in a battle which took place
 near Almora, the capital; a portion of the town
 was captured; and, on the following day, the fort
 was surrendered, and a convention was entered
 into with the Goorkha chief, by which the whole
 province was evacuated by the Goorkhas, and left
 in the undisturbed possession of the English.

The Rajah of Nepaul sues for peace. The Rajah of Nepaul, now thoroughly terrified
 by the victories of the English, asked for peace;
 and his ambassadors accepted the terms upon
 which the Governor-General promised to grant it.
 The country to the west of the river Kali, about
 which there had been disputes, was to be restored
 to the Rajahs to whom it had originally belonged;
 the plains along the Goorkha frontier were to be
 ceded; the Rajah of Sikkim was to receive back
 all the territory which had been taken from him
 by the Goorkhas; and a Resident was to be station-
 ed at the Court of Catmandoo. The Rajah was,
 however, persuaded by his counsellors to refuse
 his signature to the treaty, and to decline the
 peace which he had himself desired. The war was,
 therefore, renewed. The country to the west of

the Kali had been conquered, and the two divisions of the army which had been engaged in that quarter, had returned to their stations in the low country. The ensuing campaign was, therefore, to take place in the east, in the direction of the capital.

CHAP. XVII.

A. D. 1816.

The chief command was given to General, now Sir David, Ochterlony, who had been rewarded for his former victories with military knighthood. The General divided his force into four brigades, one of which was to enter Nepaul by a pass upon the right of the main army, another by a ghaut upon the left, and the remaining two were to advance under his immediate command straight towards Makwanpur. The way to that town lay through a steep ghaut called the Chiriaghati Pass, across which the Goorkhas had raised three very strong stockades, one behind another. Sir David Ochterlony had, however, discovered a pathway by which he could avoid the difficult route that lay before him. Leaving part of his troops at the foot of the Chiriaghati Pass, he led the remainder along the steep, narrow, rugged path, himself marching at the head of his soldiers, and sharing all their privations.

Sir D. Ochterlony turns the Chiriaghati Pass.
Feb. 17th.

The Goorkhas, as soon as they heard that Sir David Ochterlony had thus out-manœuvred them, abandoned their stockades, and retired to Makwanpur. Thither the General followed them, and encamped before the fortified heights in the neighbourhood of the town. Upon the left of the enemy's position, was a village which the Goorkhas abandoned upon the approach of the English, one of which

Battle of Makwanpur.
Feb. 23th.

CHAP. XVII. the latter immediately took possession. But it was A. D. 1816. an important post, and the enemy soon afterwards attempted with a large force to regain it. A severe battle ensued, which lasted for five hours, and ended in the repulse of the Goorkhas.

Capture of
Hariharpur.
March 1st.

Meanwhile a brigade which had been sent under Colonel Kelly to attack Hariharpur, a town situated to the right of the Chiriaghati Pass, had also defeated the enemy. He had advanced without opposition to the fort, near which a stockade had been constructed between two precipitous rocks. The English took possession of an open space which commanded this stockade, when they were attacked by overwhelming numbers; but they gained the day after a long and severe contest, and the fort was surrendered to them on the following morning.

Conclusion of
the Goorkha
war.
March 4th.

After the engagement near Makwanpur, Sir David made preparations for attacking the town and fort. But the Goorkha Government, appalled at the success of this rapid and brilliant campaign, were now willing to agree to the demands of the Governor-General. Peace was made: and, having gained what he required by their submission, Lord Moira restored to the Nepaulese a portion of the conquered territory.

Unsettled state
of Central India.

It was well that the Goorkha war was brought to an end at this time, as all the available forces of the English Government were required for defence against foes in other parts of India. The whole of Central India was in a very unsettled state: there were intrigues at the Courts of the Peishwa,

Scindia, and other Mahratta chieftains, regarding CHART, VOL. II.
 a general rising against the English; and the Pindar- A. D. 1816.
 rees and other bands of robbers were emboldened
 to run wild over the interior of the land, and had
 lately dared to plunder the territories of the Com-
 pany.

The Pindarees were originally mercenaries who The Pindarees
 had served with the Mahratta army during the re-
 cent wars; but they had been united into several
 bands under chiefs of their own, since the downfall
 of the Mahratta power. Their principal leaders at
 this time were three persons named Chertan, Ka-
 reem Khan, and Dost Mahomed. Each had a
 large number of horsemen under him: but the Pin-
 darees did not adhere strictly to one chief—whichever
 could secure most plunder, had most followers.

During the feast of the Darrā, the leaders met at Their mode
 an appointed spot, and consulted where they could of robbery and ex-
 rob and murder with the greatest advantage. Thou- ercise.
 sands hastened to their standards: men of every
 caste and creed, disbanded soldiers, and daring ad-
 venturers from the surrounding countries, resorted
 to them in large numbers. As soon as all was ready,
 they set out in several parties, which were to meet
 again, at the end of the foray, to divide the spoil.
 They rode rapidly from village to village, burn-
 ing the houses, torturing and robbing the peo-
 ple, and committing the most abominable crimes.
 They were so lightly equipped, that they could,
 day after day, march fifty or sixty miles. They
 were armed with spears, and
 locks. But they scarcely required

CHAP. XVII. object was plunder, and they always ran away from any force that might be sent against them. They were so quick, that they could slip through armies and laugh at all defences; and so active, that a regular army could rarely overtake them. These armies of robbers had for several years committed outrages in the Mahratta country, and in the territories of the neighbouring Rajahs; and they had been favoured by Scindia, the Peishwa, and others, who, although they suffered at their hands, expected to find them useful allies in the event of a war.

Pindarees foray into the Company's territories.

In 1815, however, when the first reverses of the Goorkha war had emboldened the still hostile Mahrattas, the Pindarees under Cheetoo made an incursion into the district of Masulipatam. Early in the following year, a large party of them, encouraged at meeting with little resistance, entered the Company's territories again; visited Guntoor; passed through the Cuddapah district; and, although they were only ten days about the work of destruction, left behind them more than three hundred ruined villages.

March 12th.

The English troops attack them.

Dec. 26th.

But the English troops were looking out for them. At four or five places small parties of Pindarees had been attacked and destroyed: and, on the 26th of December, the 4th Madras Cavalry, under Major Lushington, came up with a numerous detachment of the robbers, of whom they slew seven or eight hundred. The regiment had marched fifty miles; but, suddenly bursting in upon them, while, unsuspecting of danger, they were dividing their plunder

and cooking their rice, the sepoy's routed them, notwithstanding the great fatigue of the previous chase, and pursued them for a considerable distance. CHAP. XV
A. D. 1817

By October 1817, the preparations for crushing these unworthy enemies were completed. In the north a large army was assembled on the frontiers of Hindostan Proper. Five divisions under the command of Sir Thomas Hislop, the Commander-in-chief of Madras, advanced towards the Nerbudda from the Deckan: and brigades were left near Poona, Nagpore, and Hyderabad. There was also a force in Guzerat, which was to be in communication with the army of the Deckan. The whole amounted to about 113,000 men.

The G
Armies of
Hindostan and
Deckan.

Central India was thus completely surrounded by armies of imposing strength. There could be no retreat for the Pindarees; no hope of escape for their leaders; and these forces were at the same time, prepared to act against the Hill-men and effectually to break their power, should they rise in rebellion. An occasion for war with the latter power was soon afforded: and while the Great Army of Hindostan, under the command of the Governor-General himself, and the chief division of the Deckan army, drove the Pindarees across the mountains in the west, destroyed portions of those robbers, wherever they were met; and reduced them to a few, feeble bands; the other portions of the army of the Deckan were employed against Mahratta private robbers and depredators of the English.

Prepared
for war.

CHAPTER XVIII.

TWO TREACHEROUS ALLIES.

FROM A. D. 1815 TO A. D. 1817.

Relations with the Peishwa—Intrigues of Trimbakji—Disputes between the Peishwa and the Guicowar—Murder of Gangudhar Shastri—Imprisonment and escape of Trimbakji—He raises insurgent troops—Duplicity of the Peishwa—Firmness of the Resident at Poona—Rewards offered for Trimbakji's capture—New treaty with the Peishwa—The Peishwa's plots—Description of Poona—Attack on the Residency—Battle of Kirkee—Arrival of reinforcements—Flight of the Peishwa—Affairs at Nagpore—Appa Sahib made Regent—Alliance with the English—Appa Sahib becomes Rajah—Plots against his allies—Description of Nagpore—Battle of Sectabuldee—Captain Fitzgerald's gallant charge—Negotiations with the Rajah—Arrival of reinforcements—Battle of Nagpore—Siege and surrender of Nagpore—Battle of Jubbulpore—Restoration of Appa Sahib.

SINCE the treaty of Bassein, the Peishwa had been in alliance with the English. English troops were stationed near his capital; an English Resident was at his court; and he was obliged, outwardly at least, to follow English counsels. But he did not

admire the restraint which these things implied. CHAP. XVII
He feared his allies; but, at the same time, he A.D. 1816.
hated them.

Soon after the arrival of Lord Moira, serious differences had arisen between the Peishwa and the Resident. The former had taken into his favour a low-born and disreputable person named Trimbakji Dainglia, who continually urged his master to oppose his unwelcome allies. At Trimbakji's instigation, the Peishwa had been secretly encouraging the Mahratta princes to rise against the English; had taken up the position which former Peishwas had held, as head of the Mahratta confederacy; and had prepared the way for opposition to the English, which, as the following events will show, was ready to break out as soon as he afforded it any open encouragement.

Intrigue
of Trimbakji
Dainglia.

In 1814, disputes had occurred between the Peishwa and the Guicowar, a Mahratta prince, who ruled in Guzerat under the protection of the English Government. In the following year, an agent named Gangudhar Shastri was sent by the Guicowar to the Peishwa's Court to bring the differences between the two powers to an amicable conclusion. He was at first received in a cold and disrespectful manner; but the Peishwa, in order to disguise his real feelings, afterwards assumed a more cordial tone. The ambassador was invited to visit a celebrated pagoda at Punderpore, and, while there, was cruelly murdered by the favourite's order; and it was strongly suspected that the foul deed was committed at the Peishwa's instigation.

Disputes be-
tween the Peish-
wa and the Gu-
cowar.

CHAP. XVIII. Mr. Mountstuart Elphinstone, the Resident, immediately requested that Trimbakji should be sur-

Imprisonment
and escape of
Trimbakji.

rendered to the English Government. The Peishwa, after some hesitation, consented; and the murderer was taken to Tanna, near Bombay, where he was kept in close confinement. His followers, however, were determined to rescue him. One of them, disguised as a horsekeeper, entered into the service of an English officer, and was employed in the stable which was situated directly under Trimbakji's prison. As he cleaned his horse, he amused himself by singing snatches of Mahratta songs. This habit was not particularly remarked at the time; but the prisoner's room was one morning found empty, and then it was surmised that the verses which the disguised Mahratta had sung were full of invitations to resistance and to flight.

Intrigues of
Trimbakji and
the Peishwa.

Trimbakji and the musical horsekeeper fled to the mountains, where the former soon gathered around him a party of daring men, which day by day increased in number; and, although falsehood upon falsehood was told to the Resident upon the subject, he was aided by the favour and the money of the Peishwa. The insurgents were defeated by the English troops, and Trimbakji was again obliged to hide among the hills: but the Resident, foreseeing that there was danger of the Peishwa's rising, insisted on his giving up his favourite again; on his surrendering three of his strongest forts; and on his agreeing to these requests within four-and-twenty hours. The city was surrounded by English troops to shew that Mr. Elphinstone was in earnest; and

these energetic measures so appalled the Peishwa, CHAP. XV.
that he agreed to every thing which the Resident A. D. 1817
required. A large reward was offered for the ap-
prehension of Trimbakji; his property was seized;
and the forts which the Resident had named were
surrendered.

The Peishwa's conduct in the recent transactions Fresh Str
had been so peculiarly faithless, that the treaty of with the Pe
Bassein was set aside by the Governor-General's wa.
order, and another treaty prepared, which was June 13th
designed to counteract his treacherous designs to-
wards his allies, and to dissolve his connection with
the Mahratta confederacy. He was obliged to cede
a further amount of territory for the maintenance
of the English troops, and to hold communication
with other Courts only with the concurrence of
the Resident. He signed this fresh treaty, much
against his will, in June 1817.

These events made him hate his allies still more Continua
than he had done before; and he continued his of the Peish
intrigues against them more zealously and more plots.
systematically. He assembled a large force at
Poona, which, he pretended, was prepared to assist
the English against the Pindarees; and he at-
tempted to induce the sepoy who were stationed
there to desert their masters. There were only a
few troops at Poona, but the Resident allowed one
of the divisions of the Grand Army, under General
Lionel Smith, to leave the neighbourhood, and to
march against the Pindarees, at the same time
requesting that officer to return, if he failed to hear
regularly from Poona.

CHAP. XVIII. Poona is situated on a small river, upon the opposite bank of which stood the Residency; and

A. D. 1817. ^{Description of Poona.} two miles lower down the stream, which in that quarter forms a semicircle, is the small village of Kirkee. To this village the sepoys were removed, and were there kept in readiness for action. Another small force was stationed in the neighbourhood of Kirkee, but at a little distance on the other side of the river. The whole of the English troops amounted to only 2,800 men, while the army which the Peishwa had assembled numbered more than 25,000.

Attack on the Residency.

The hostile forces were soon to be engaged. On the 5th of November, the Peishwa's followers attacked the Residency, and Mr. Elphinstone had only just time to cross the river by a neighbouring ford, before the Mahrattas broke into his dwelling. He recrossed the stream by a bridge, joined the troops at Kirkee, and accompanied them during their attack on the army of the Peishwa.

Battle of Kirkee.

Nov. 5th.

As soon as the Resident had joined the troops, the battle began. A fierce charge of Mahratta horse upon the right wing was repulsed. On the left, one of the sepoy regiments was surrounded, thrown into confusion, and nearly broken by the enemy, when the Bombay European Regiment dashed up to its aid. The line was reformed; the division from the opposite side of the river, which had fought its way up through masses of cavalry, had arrived; and the enemy was effectually prevented from surrounding the troops again. After the engagement the English troops returned to Kirkee. The Mahrattas encamped on the ground which they had

previously occupied ; but they were afraid to attempt a second attack upon the English encampment. CHAP. XVI
A.D. 1817

Meanwhile General Smith, having received no tidings from the Resident, imagined that there was something wrong at Poona, and returned thither with his division. Four days after his arrival, an advance was made on the Mahratta camp ; but it was found deserted. The Peishwa, dismayed at the increased strength of the English army, had fled during the night. The town of Poona was taken possession of without resistance, for the inhabitants were, in general, favourably disposed towards the English. Arrival of
inforcements.

Nov. 17th.

Soon after these events, the Rajah of Nagpore, another Mahratta prince, made similar treacherous attacks upon his allies. The Rajah of Berar whom General Wellesley defeated in 1803, had naturally shown a great dislike to a close and cordial alliance with those who had subdued him. He died in 1816 : and, as his son who succeeded him was half an idiot, it was necessary that some one should be appointed Regent of the kingdom. Many aspired to that office ; but Moodajee Bhoosla, a near relation of the Rajah's, who is better known by the name of Appa Sahib, was chosen, chiefly owing to the support of the English ; and the newly appointed Regent thought that the wisest and safest plan which he could adopt, was to make a firm alliance with those by whose help he had gained the day against his opponents. He requested permission, therefore, to form an alliance with them ; and a treaty was entered into with him in the Rajah's name, Affairs at
Nagpore,

Mar. 22nd 1816

May 27th.

CHAP. XVIII. as with the Peishwa, the Nizam, and the Nabob of
 A. D. 1817. Onde, by which it was agreed that the Company
 should defend him from all enemies, and that a cer-
 tain number of troops should, for this purpose, be
 stationed at Nagpore, the expenses for maintain-
 ing them being paid out of the Rajah's treasury.

Death of the
 Rajah and intri-
 gues of Appa
 Sahib.

Feb. 1st.

The imbecile Rajah soon afterwards died : and Ap-
 pa Sahib ascended the throne. It then appeared that
 the new sovereign had asked for an alliance with the
 English merely to serve his own purposes, and had
 no desire to retain it after the object of his ambi-
 tion had been attained. He entered into corres-
 pondence with the other Mahratta chiefs, and es-
 pecially with the Peishwa, who had openly risen
 against their common ally. He received from the
 Peishwa the title of Commander-in-chief of the Mah-
 rattas, and a gaudy standard belonging to that office;
 assembled an army, which, he pretended, as the Peish-
 wa had done, was to aid the English against the
 Pindarees ; and, though still professing a wish for
 peace, prepared to attack the Residency and the
 English troops. Mr. Jenkins, the Resident, was
 obliged to apply for assistance, and General Dove-
 ton, with a division of the army of the Deckan, was
 advancing to Nagpore. But, meanwhile, the few
 men at that place made preparations for resisting
 the threatened attack, as bravely as those at Poona
 had done : and soldier and civilian were resolved
 manfully to oppose their country's enemies, though
 the latter were in number as twenty to one.

Description of
 Nagpore.

The Residency was separated from the town of
 Nagpore by a low range called the Sectabuldee Hills.
 At the northern extremity of this range was situated

a narrow, conical hill; and on the south was another hill larger than the former, but of a lower elevation. The greater part of the infantry was stationed at these two points, on the former of which two guns were placed. A smaller body of infantry and all the cavalry were drawn up in the grounds belonging to the Residency.

On the afternoon of the 24th of November, a number of Arabs in the service of the Rajah gathered round the party which was stationed on the heights. The Rajah still pretended to be friendly to the English; but, while two of his ministers were treating with the Resident in his name, the firing of his troops was heard, and plainly shewed his insincerity.

During the greater part of the night, the darkness was broken by the flashes from the cannon on either side. The Arabs were endeavouring to take the smaller hill, and the sepoys were bravely defending it. At the same time, a Mahratta army advanced from the city to the plain, and in the morning were seen surrounding the Residency and the English who were stationed near it, and who were anxious and interested spectators of the struggle which was still raging on the neighbouring hills. The conflict appeared to be unfavourable to the English. One of the guns on the conical hill was rendered useless. The Arabs rushed up the ascent; overpowered the few sepoys who were posted there; brought two of their own guns to the summit; and opened fire upon those who still held the other hill.

The Mahrattas in the plain drew nearer and near-

CHAP. XVIII. *er.* The day seemed lost, when Captain Fitzgerald, A. D. 1817. with only three troops of cavalry, charged the advancing line; drove the Mahrattas back; seized their guns; and returned to his position near the Residency, firing the captured cannon as he retired. The bold deed was seen from the hills. With a shout of triumph, the sepoy's dashed in among the Arabs with the bayonet. The Arabs, fighting hard, fell back. At the moment of their retreat, a tumbril on the smaller hill, which was still in their possession, exploded, and, during the confusion, the sepoy's pushed forward, drove the enemy before them, and regained the summit. A small body of cavalry, at that moment, galloped round the heights, and completely dispersed the enemy. A few brave men had gained the victory over a host.

Negotiations
with the Rajah.

The hypocritical Rajah expressed great sorrow for what had happened, and requested that he might still receive the support and favour of the English. The Resident told him, however, that no terms could be granted him, until his army had left the field. He readily agreed to this proposition, the Mahratta force was withdrawn to a position on the other side of the city, and a short truce was concluded.

Arrival of English troops.

But English troops were advancing from every quarter. On the 13th of December the division under General Doveton arrived, and gave the Resident as much support as he required. He could now dictate his own terms. These were, that the Rajah should own he had justly forfeited his crown; that he should disband his army; and, for the present,

surrender Nagpore to the English. The Rajah CHAP. XVI
hesitated, made delay after delay, and avoided a A. D. 1817
plain and explicit statement of his intentions.

The English army was prepared for battle on the morning of the 15th, and a stated time was fixed, within which a decided answer was demanded. On the 16th the troops marched towards the Mahratta encampment. At the eleventh hour the Rajah rode into the English line, delivered himself up, and promised, to surrender his artillery. The army advanced to take possession of the guns, according to the Rajah's orders. The first battery was yielded; but, as the English proceeded, they met with resistance, and the battle of Nagpore began. The English infantry carried the guns before them at the point of the bayonet, while the cavalry and the horse artillery attacked the enemy's left.

Battle of Nagpore.
Dec. 16th.

The Mahrattas in the field being thus dispersed, it only remained to take the city of Nagpore, which was principally defended by Arabs. As the siege artillery, however, had not arrived, a small breach only could be made by the few guns with the force, and an attempt at storming failed. But the Arabs surrendered the city before another attempt could be made.

Siege and surrender of Nagpore.
Dec. 31st.

Meanwhile a division under General Hardyman had been ordered from Rewah to Nagpore. As he was on his way thither, he encountered an army of Mahrattas at Jubbulpore. They were drawn up in a strong position, with their right on and rocky hill, and their left upon a stream.

Battle of Jubbulpore.
Dec. 18th.

CHAP. XVIII. and the town. The enemy's horse retreated before A. D. 1817. the charge of the English: but the infantry, ascending the hill, defended it for a short time with vigour and resolution. The English soldiers, however, forced them from their position, and put them to flight. After the battle, General Hardyman advanced towards Nagpore; but he had not proceeded far, when he received a message from the Resident, informing him of the recent battle and surrender of the town, and, as his services were not required there, he returned to Jubbulpore.

Lenity shewn
towards the Ra-
jah.

When the Governor-General heard of the events at Nagpore, he desired that the faithless Rajah should be deposed, unless the Resident had already promised to keep him on the throne. Such had been the case; and Appa Sahib, in consequence, held the title of Rajah for a little time longer. His treachery, however, was not yet cured, nor his punishment complete.

CHAPTER XIX.

CONCLUSION OF THE PINDAREE WAR.

FROM A. D. 1817 TO A. D. 1819.

Scindia—Jeswant Row Holkar succeeded by his son—Scindia is intimidated—Majority of Holkar's chieftains declare for war—Murder of Toulsee Bhye—Battle of Mahidpore—Holkar's dominions subdued—Extirpation of the Pindarees—Kareem Khan surrenders—End of Cheetoo—Pursuit after the Peishwa—Advance of the Peishwa on Poona—Gallant action at Corregaum—The Peishwa's flight continued—Bapur Gokla—Cavalry action at Ashtee—Surrender of the Peishwa—A residence assigned him at Bithoor—Restoration of the Rajah of Sattara—Trimbakji taken prisoner—Capture of Talnere—Execution of the warder—The Rajah of Nagpore renews his intrigues—Is taken prisoner—Is sent to Allahabad—Escapes—Flees to the Mahadeo Hills—Capture of Aseerghur—Appa Sahib flees again—Takes refuge in the Punjab—A new Rajah at Nagpore—Conclusion of the war.

WE must now leave, for a time, the affairs of these two treacherous princes, and notice two other Mahratta powers, who had once given great trouble to the English, but whose means of annoyance had, in a great measure, been diminished. Scindia,

CHAP. XIX.

A. D. 1817.

Conduct of
Scindia.

their old foe, was still alive : but Holkar, had died mad, and his territory had passed into the hands of his son, Mulhar Row Holkar, and of Toolsee Bhye, one of his concubines, who acted as Regent of the kingdom, during the young Holkar's minority. Scindia had shown signs of hostility ; but the threatening array under the Marquis of Hastings kept him from any open acts of enmity. He prepared a force to act with the English ; refused to give protection to the scattered Pindarees ; and behaved very well towards his allies. There was trouble, however, with many of his chieftains ; some of whom refused to surrender their forts upon the presentation of his orders, declaring that they had received from him secret directions of a different nature.

Holkar's chief-
tains declare for
war.

Toolsee Bhye, and part of those who bore rule in Holkar's dominions, were disposed to remain at peace with the English ; but the greater number of the chieftains were heartily opposed to such a measure. The war-party prevailed. Toolsee Bhye was murdered ; those who had agreed with her were imprisoned ; and an army was prepared for the field. The division of the English forces which was under the immediate command of Sir Thomas Hislop, was stationed near. It was joined by two other divisions at Oojein, and the united army advanced against the enemy at Mahidpore.

Battle of Ma-
hidpore.
Dec. 21st.

A river separated it from the Mahrattas, who were drawn upon the opposite bank, supported by a long and formidable row of guns. A detachment of the enemy which was posted upon the English side of

the stream being driven back, the troops crossed the river, under cover of the artillery. The bank on the opposite side was high, and they were enabled, under the shelter afforded by it, to form into line after crossing. The greater part of the infantry, under Sir John Malcolm, were to attack the enemy's left; and the remainder, with the cavalry, were opposed to his right. As soon as they advanced from the river, an awful fire was opened upon them: but they marched through it without hesitation; fought their way up to the guns; and compelled the enemy to retire. The Mahrattas retreated along the stream in good order, making a second stand near a ford, where they desired to cross the river; but this movement was made only to enable the greater portion of their army to retire, and, when the English came up, they fled, without offering any further resistance.

This battle put an end to the opposition of Holkar's chiefs. No further engagement took place, the territory of Holkar was effectually subdued, and a treaty was entered into at Mundesore with those who acted for Mulhar Row Holkar, by which large portions of the country were given up to the English, an English force was stationed in his dominions, and all real power passed into their hands.

For the present, all the English army, except a division which was pursuing the Peishwa and his troops, were free from the Mahrattas, and the greater part of it could be employed in completing the ruin of the Pindarees. Parties of these robbers were still in arms under their principal leaders, Kareem

CHAP. XIX.
A. D. 1817.

Subjugation
of Holkar's do-
minions.
Jan. 6th 1818.

Extirpation of
the Pindarees.

CHAP. XIX. two field-pieces. They then attempted to drive
 A. D. 1818. the English from the other side of the village. The
 encounter was close and deadly. The Arabs climbed
 over the enclosure walls, and clambered along
 the house-tops to encounter their foes. The
 English met them with the bayonet. The sepoys
 were half-starving. They had nothing to eat, and
 they had not tasted a drop of water during the day;
 but they fought for their lives, as they knew that
 the Arabs would shew them no mercy. The officers
 led them on nobly, and the surgeons, laying down
 their instruments, cheered the men forward, and
 fought side by side with their noble comrades. The
 hard conflict had begun at noon; and, when the
 shades of evening fell, it was still continued with
 unabated vigour. But the Arabs had the advantage.
 Five out of the eight English officers had been cut
 down. One of the guns had been taken. The
 enemy had entered a shed, where many of the
 wounded lay, and had brutally murdered every one.
 It was no time for surrender, however, for every
 one knew that the Arabs would, if he fell into their
 hands, hack him to pieces, as they had done his
 wounded comrades. All hope had gone. No! no!
 while there is life, there is hope. One charge more
 must be made. Hurrah! It is successful. Captain
 Staunton, Lieutenant Jones, and Doctor Wylie
 lead the brave fellows on. They dash into the
 shed; rush upon the Arabs with the bayonet; and
 fight with the energy that desperation only gives.
 Lieutenant Patterson, who is lying on the ground
 wounded, forgetful of himself and of his suffering
 seizes a musket by the muzzle; hastens to his

CHAP. XIX

A. D. 1818

companions' aid ; and, striking down every Arab whom his arm can reach, encourages the sepoy's forward until he is laid low a second time by a bullet. But the captured gun is retaken, and the Arabs driven back. The fighting continued : but by nine o'clock the enemy was obliged to retreat from the village, and the sepoy's were able to procure a little water to refresh themselves after the noble conflict in which they had been engaged.

On the following morning the Mahrattas felt no inclination to renew the attack ; and in the evening Captain Staunton returned to Seroor, which he entered with colours flying and drums beating, after one of the most gallant actions ever fought in India.

Capt. Staunton's return to Seroor.

The Peishwa still continued his wanderings. He was a thorough coward, and always ran away the instant that any danger was apprehended. He was accompanied, however, by a brave officer named Bapur Gokla, who had the command of his army ; but Gokla was killed at Ashtee, where the English cavalry overtook the Mahrattas, and completely routed them.

Continuation of the Peishwa's flight.

Feb. 20th.

It would be tedious to follow the Peishwa's course after the death of Gokla. His troops decreased day by day, and, at length, only a small party of Arabs remained with him ; but whithersoever he turned, he was met by a division of the English army, he retired towards

His surrender to Sir John Malcolm.

June 3rd.

Sir John Malcolm

of

CHAP. XIX. The Governor-General confirmed the promises

A. D. 1818. which Sir John Malcolm had made to the humbled
Retirement of the Peishwa. Peishwa, though he did not altogether approve of them. Baji Row was removed to Bithur near Cawnpore : an allowance of eight lacks of rupees a year was given to him ; and he passed the remainder of his days in the enjoyment of every luxury and indulgence.*

Restoration of the Rajah of Sattara. The office of Peishwa was abolished, and the Rajah of Sattara, who was the lineal descendant of Sevaji and the proper head of the Mahrattas, was restored to his throne, his kingdom being placed under the protection and guidance of the English.

Capture and imprisonment of Trimbakji. Soon after the Peishwa had surrendered, his favourite, Trimbakji, who was the real promoter of the war, was taken prisoner at Nassuck, where he had hidden himself. He was again placed in confinement at Tanna, whence he had formerly effected his escape, but was afterwards removed to the fort of Chunar near Benares.

Return of the English army. As the principal objects of the campaign had been accomplished, the several divisions of the English army had, for some time past, been returning to the Company's territories, a sufficient force being left to contend against those Mahrattas who were still in arms. The division under the immediate command of Sir Thomas Hislop while proceeding from Malwa into the Deekan, was obliged to pass near the fort of Talnere; which overlooked a ford of the river Tapti. The place belonged to Holkar, and Sir Thomas Hislop possessed an order from that prince for its surrender. The commandment, how-

ever, would obey neither the order of the English General nor the command of his master, but fired upon the English, as they drew near. Preparations for an attack were immediately made. The storming parties carried the two outer gateways of the fort; but, when they reached the third, a number of the enemy, among whom was the commandant, came out unarmed and were taken prisoners. The other gates were forced open, and, at the last, which led into the interior of the fort, the garrison either desired, or pretended to desire, to surrender. A small wicket door within the gate was opened: but the instant that a few English officers and men stepped through it, they were cut down by some Arabs who were crowding round the entrance. The gateway was immediately battered in; and the English soldiery, furious at the treachery which they believed had been shown, rushed in, and put to the sword every armed man within the place.

On the following morning, Sir Thomas Hislop ordered the commandant to be hanged upon the ramparts for his treachery and rebellion. The act was generally condemned both in India and in England; but, whether it was right or wrong, it had the immediate effect of deterring others from similar disobedience.

After the surrender of the Peishwa, the principal enemy still unsubdued was the Rajah of Nagpore. As soon as he was resealed upon his throne by the kindness and forbearance of the Resident, he began to plot against his protectors. He wrote to the

CHAP. XIX.

A. D. 1818.

Treachery of

Feb. 17th.

Execution of
the commandant.Treachery and
arrest of Appa
Sahib.

March 16th.

CHAP. XIX. wandering Peishwa for assistance ; he entered into
 A. D. 1818. correspondence with the Pindarees ; and he attempted to incite all the discontented spirits in the Mahratta country against those who had so greatly befriended him: The Resident, having received timely notice of these acts, thought it advisable to take the troublesome Rajah into custody, as he was upon the point of leaving the captial for a strong fort, whither he had sent on his family and treasure. After he had been placed in confinement, it was discovered that he had murdered his predecessor for the sake of obtaining the crown.

Appa Sahib's
 escape.

May 13th.

It was expected, at the time, that the Peishwa would make a desperate effort against Nagpore, and, consequently, all the troops in the neighbourhood were required for its defence. As soon, however, as the likelihood of such an event had past away, Appa Sahib was sent with a strong escort to Allahabad ; but on the road he contrived to escape by bribing the sepoy, and fled to the Mahadeo Hills, which are situated to the north of Nagpore. He found shelter among the wild and savage inhabitants of those mountains, and assisted by one of their petty Rajahs. He remained in this retreat for some time, doing a great deal of damage to the surrounding country, into which he made incursions with the lawless men whom he had collected around him.

Siege of Aseer-
 ghur.

April 9th 1819.

But an English army being ready to attack him, as soon as the season would permit, he fled once more, and, accompanied, as we have seen, by the Pindarees

Cheetoo, sought refuge in the fort of Aseerghur, which was commanded by Jeswunt Row Lar, an old friend of the Pindarees. The fort belonged to Scindia, but the commandant would not surrender it according to the order of his master. A few days' siege, however, induced him to alter his resolution, and to place the fort in the hands of the English, who kept it in their possession, as papers were found in it containing ample proof of treachery and underhand dealing on the part of Scindia.

But Appa Sahib was not in Aseerghur. He had continued his flight, as soon as the English appeared near that place. He wandered about from place to place, in the disguise of a fakcer, until he reached the Punjab, where he received a small allowance from Runjeet Sing. He afterwards returned to Hindostan, and the English Government permitted him to reside in the territories of the Rajah of Joudpore, where he was able to commit no more mischief.

The crown of Nagpore was given to the next heir, whose name was Baji Row. As he was very young, his mother was appointed Regent of the kingdom during his minority; but all real power was vested in the English Resident.

With the siege of Aseerghur hostilities ceased: the Pindaree and Mahratta war was at an end. The Pindarees were extirpated; the Mahrattas were thoroughly conquered; and the might of the English in India had at no time appeared so noble or so strong. Large portions of territory came into

CHAP. XIX.

A. D. 1819.

Flight and
usual refuge of
Appa Sahib.Changes at
Nagpore.Conclusion of
war.

CHAP. XIX. possession, and very soon a change was seen in
A. D. 1519. Central India. Villages which had once been ruined
by savage robbers, revived and flourished again
fields which had been trodden down by march of
lawless armies, once more grew fresh and green
and the people who had been in hourly danger of
life were rendered prosperous and happy under
the protection of the English Government.

CHAPTER XX.

EXPEDITION TO BURMAH.

FROM A. D. 1823 TO A. D. 1826.

Lord Amherst the new Governor-General—Disputes with the Burmese—Dissensions about Shupoorce—Affairs in Cachar—Declaration of war—Plan of the campaign—Capture of Rangoon—Attacks on stockades—Capture of Kemendine—Position of the English—Repulse of the enemy from the Great Pagoda—Fall of Martaban and other places on the coast—Advance of Maha Bandoola—Total defeat of the Burmese—Conflagration at Rangoon—Advance into the interior—The water column repulsed at Donabew—Backward movement of the land column—Capture of Donabew—Death of Maha Bandoola—Stay at Prome—Conquest of Arracan—Negotiations—A truce—Defeat of the enemy—Capture of Melloon—Battle of Pagahm—The English draw near Ava—Conclusion of peace—Disturbances at Bhurtpore—Dethronement of the youthful Rajah—Usurpation of Doorjun Saul—Government take the part of the Rajah—Siege of Bhurtpore.

THE Marquis of Hastings left India in January 1823, and his successor, Lord Amherst, arrived in the following August. Lord Amherst had not

CHAP. XX.

A. D. 1823.

Disputes with
the Burmese.

been Governor-General long, before it was evident that war was necessary in a quarter towards which the English had not hitherto directed their arms. The Burmese, who had lately conquered the country of Assam, and whose territory had thereby been extended along the eastern frontier of Bengal, had committed a great many outrages on the Company's subjects in the border lands.

The Burmese
take Shapoorce.

Sep. 24th.

A small guard of sepoy had been stationed upon a sandy, barren island, named Shapoorce, which is situated on the boundary between Chittagong and Arracan. Disputes arose about the possession of this island; and, in September 1823, the Burmese landed there, overpowered the weak guard, and drove them from the place. The Governor-General remonstrated with the Court of Ava regarding these proceedings; but the Burmese looked upon this attempt at negotiation as a sign of fear, and treated it with contempt.

Occurrences
in Cachar.

Jan. 1824.

In the following January, a large force of Burmese marched into Cachar, drew near the English advanced post at Sylhet, and entrenched themselves behind stockades. The English detachment attacked and routed them: and other attacks were made, one of them unsuccessfully. The Burmese were also guilty of an act of treachery in enticing from their vessel the commander and crew of a schooner called "The Sophia," which had been stationed off Shapoorce, and in carrying them away as prisoners. The captives were released in a few weeks; but without a word of apology or regret.

War had thus been going on upon the frontier for sometime past. It was now declared in form. The Burmese were very eager for war. They had been successful in all their attacks upon the neighbouring states, and they expected the same triumphs over English soldiers and sepoys.

CHAP. XX.

A. D. 1824.

Declaration of war.

Feb. 24th.

The presumption and boasting of the Burmese monarch were great; but he was soon to be undeceived. A force was in readiness to invade his dominions, and to convince him that his troops could not successfully contend against English discipline and valour. Operations on the frontier were to be principally defensive, while the chief attack was to be made on that part of Burmah which was supposed to be most defenceless; to strike a blow at the enemy's sea-ports; and to ascend into the heart of the country by the river Irawaddi.

Plan of the campaign.

The invading army was placed under the command of Sir Archibald Campbell. It assembled at Port Cornwallis in the Andaman Islands early in May, and on the 9th of that month a few vessels of war and the transports with the troops reached the mouth of the Rangoon river. On the 11th they anchored off the town. A feeble fire was opened upon them; but the batteries were speedily silenced by the broadsides of the frigate *Liffey*. The soldiers were then landed and marched into the town, which was found entirely deserted. The Burmese troops had fled, and all the inhabitants had left their homes for the jungles which surround Rangoon.

Capture of Rangoon.

May 11th.

In these jungles the Burmese employed themselves busily in raising stockades, under cover of

CHAP. XX. As the season was unfavourable for an advance, the
 A. D. 1824. General determined to reduce the enemy's stations
 Capture of Martaban and other towns. on the sea-coast. Syriam and Dalla, two places in the neighbourhood of Rangoon, were captured; Martaban was taken by Colonel Godwin; and Tayoy and Mergui in the province of Tenasserim were captured by Colonel Miles. An attack, however, on a place called Kykloo was repulsed. The troops were composed entirely of sepoys. They were thrown into a panic by the loss of their officers, and were obliged to retreat. A party was afterwards sent to retrieve this misfortune; but the place had been abandoned and the stockades destroyed.

repulse of the King's Invulnerables.
 Aug. 30th. At the end of August, a large force of Burmese, chiefly composed of men who called themselves the King's Invulnerables, and who really imagined themselves proof against bayonets and shot, attacked the great Pagoda at midnight. A few volleys speedily put them to flight, and convinced them of their vulnerability.

occurrences in Arracan.
 The Burmese commanders had been often changed, and every one conquered. The King of Ava resolved, therefore, as a last resource, to send for Maha Bandoola, his favourite chief, who had been partially successful in Arracan. A small party of sepoys in that province had been defeated, owing to the misconduct of some of the Company's irregular troops; the Burmese re-entered Cachar; and a few indecisive actions ensued. The removal of Bandoola put an end to all anxiety about the events in that quarter.

After a short visit to the capital, Bandoola marched quickly to Rangoon with a large army. He stockaded himself strongly in the forests, and on the 1st of December advanced to attack. The Burmese army came forward in imposing array, with gaudy banners flying, and the gilt umbrellas of the chieftains glittering in the sun. But it suddenly disappeared. The Burmese soldiers had set themselves busily to dig, and had entrenched themselves, two by two, in neat little earth-works. Nothing but heaps of freshly piled earth could be seen in the place, where, a short time before, a flourishing armyment had stood. A detachment of English soldiers, however, took them by surprise, and drove them out of their defences. An attack was also made on Kemendine, which was repulsed by the gallant fire-rafts were floated, one after another, towards the shipping, but without effect. On the 20th of December, the enemy was attacked, and put to flight; and two days afterwards was totally routed, after a brave but ineffectual defence.

Meanwhile the inhabitants of Rangoon, induced to return to their dwellings, at the same time, a great number of the enemy had been admitted into the town, which was soon fired by these emissaries of the Burmese. A great deal of damage was done: but the fire was soon extinguished, and the next day a force was sent out to punish the enemy. The vessels which they attacked were strong: the Burmese numbered twenty thousand, and the assailants only a few hundred; but, in a quarter of an hour,

CHAP. XX.

A.D. 1824

ADVANCE OF

P. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.

information
at Rangoon.

CHAP. XX. were driven from their formidable entrenchments
 A. D. 1824. and put to flight. They fled into the interior of
 the country, and appeared no more before Rangoon.

Advance into
 the interior in
 two columns.

The English force was at this time more healthy than it had been hitherto; the enemy had retreated; and the inhabitants were friendly. Sir Archibald Campbell determined, therefore, to carry out the principal object of the campaign, and to advance into the interior. The army intended for this purpose was divided into two columns; one being directed to proceed up the Irawaddi in boats, accompanied by the boats of the men-of-war; and the other to co-operate with it by land. Sir Archibald Campbell went with the latter. He advanced rapidly, and had proceeded some distance, when he heard that the first column had been unsuccessful in an attack on the defences at Donabew, which is situated about forty miles above Rangoon.

Repulse of the
 marine column
 at Donabew.

Mar. 8th, 1825.

General Cotton, who commanded the water column, had been ordered to dislodge the Burmese from that town, whither they had retreated after their reverses before Rangoon; but the number of the troops was insufficient to take so strong a place as Donabew. The handful of soldiers with him carried the first stockade gallantly; but the second stockade was so strong that the besiegers were compelled to retire. As soon as Sir Archibald Campbell heard of this disaster, he returned, and in a short time appeared before Donabew. The column in the flotilla, which had retired to a place a few miles lower down the river, joined him, as soon as

the wind permitted, when Maha Bandoola made a grand sortie upon the re-united force. It was repulsed with coolness and courage, and preparations were then made for conducting a formal siege. Directly the batteries were constructed, the firing commenced: but the place fell into the hands of the English without a struggle. Maha Bandoola was killed by a rocket or a shell, and with the death of their leader fell the hopes of the Burmese. They fled precipitately, leaving the town to the English, who found in it supplies for several months.

CHAP. XX.
A. D. 1827.
Occupation
of
Arracan.
April 2nd.

After the fall of Donabew, the onward march was resumed; and, on the 25th of April, Sir Archibald Campbell reached Prome, which was deserted upon his approach. It was set on fire by the enemy, but the English succeeded in saving a part of it from destruction. As the rainy season was drawing near, they remained there for several months, the army being quartered in comfortable cantonments around the town, to which the inhabitants were induced to return by the conciliating and friendly behaviour of the English troops.

Occupation
of
Prome.
April 23rd.

While these events were taking place, a force was sent into Arracan, with orders to join Sir Archibald Campbell's army, after the reduction of that province had been effected. The capital was taken, although it was well and gallantly defended, and the country conquered: but the climate was found to be unhealthy, and the scheme of crossing the mountains to join the main army impracticable, and the troops were consequently withdrawn.

Conquest
of
Arracan.
April 1st.

CHAP. XX. During Sir Archibald Campbell's stay at Promé,
 A. D. 1825. negotiations were opened with the Court of Ava,
 and a truce which lasted until the 2nd of November,
 was concluded with the enemy. The Burmese expressed a great desire for peace ; but it was perfectly insincere, for they would not agree to the reasonable terms of the English commander. At the end of the truce, therefore, the war was resumed.

Defeat of the
 Burmese near
 one. The Burmese had advanced towards Promé, and stockaded themselves in the neighbourhood of that town. Three parties were sent to dislodge them from their stockades ; but two of these returned without achieving the desired object. The Burmese drew nearer and nearer, but refrained from attack ; the English General, therefore, again assumed the offensive with a suitable force, and this time with perfect success. Stockade after stockade was rapidly taken. The enemy, scattered hither and thither, fled across the plain to the river, and suffered severe loss from the English horse artillery. These successes were followed up by others. All the enemy's works were taken ; and, as the army proceeded, every post was abandoned in succession.

capture of Mel-
 loon. Negotiations were again renewed, but they did
 not stop the advance of the English, who had reached a fortified village named Melloon. Although the Burmese had sued for peace, they would not consent to abandon this post. It was, therefore, assaulted and carried, as the others had been, in the face of an overwhelming force.

The conquering army was met on its march by an

American Missionary and a released prisoner, who had been sent by the king to treat for peace. The same terms as before were stated; but the Burmese monarch would not yet agree to them. He made one more effort to drive the victors back. A new leader, who bore the remarkable title of the Prince of Darkness, was appointed to command his army; and, on the 9th of February, the English forces, which were only 2,000 in number, again met the Burmese, who, to the amount of 18,000, were arranged in battle array to meet them. The Burmese leader had departed from the usual custom of fighting behind stockades, and had brought all his available forces into the open field. His army was drawn up in a semicircle across the main road, where the ground was so covered with prickly bushes that it was difficult for an army to manœuvre. The English began the attack by assailing the advancing wings of the hostile force, upon which movement the Burmese commander threw forward his centre to support the menaced divisions; but all were defeated, and the last hope of the Burmese sovereign failed.

The march towards the capital was now unimpeded. The king was filled with alarm, and begged for peace, the negotiations for which were brought to an end, when the English army had arrived at Yandabo, about forty miles from Ava. The Burmese agreed to relinquish all claims on the provinces of Assam, Jyntea, and Cachar; to cede to the conquerors Arracan and the Tenasserim Provinces; and to pay a crore of rupees in three instalments. Upon the receipt of the second instal-

CHAP. XX.

A. D. 1825.

Battle of
Fahou.

Feb. 20th.

Peace concluded
near Ava.

Feb. 21th.

CHAP. XX. ment, the English were to leave Rangoon, which
 A. D. 1826. they were to retain until the payment was made. The first Burmese war was thus brought to an honourable conclusion.

Affairs
 Bhurtpore.

at During its progress, military operations had also been carried on in another direction. The Rajah of Bhurtpore, an ally of the English, died in January 1825, leaving a son of tender age, whom Sir David Ochterlony, the Resident in Malwa and Rajpootana, recognized as the lawful successor to the throne. Doorjun Saul, a cousin of the youthful Rajah, however, laid claim to the crown, seized the fortress of Bhurtpore, imprisoned Bulwunt Sing, the rightful Rajah, and murdered his guardian. Sir David Ochterlony immediately assembled a force to oppose the usurper, and ordered it to advance towards Bhurtpore; but the Government, disapproving of these arrangements, commanded the return of all the troops which he had put in motion, and accepted his retirement from the appointment of Resident.

Disturbances
 in the Bhurt-
 pore territory.

Serious disturbances, however, arose in the country of Bhurtpore. Doorjun Saul's brother with a great part of the population conspired against him, and the whole district was thrown into a state of anarchy and confusion.

English policy
 with regard to
 that country.

This state of things could not be permitted to continue, and a considerable force under Lord Combermere, the Commander-in-chief, was sent to attack the fortress of Bhurtpore, and to uphold the cause of Bulwunt Sing. Doorjun Saul was, however, well supported. Bhurtpore had resisted the attacks of

Lord Lake's army twenty years before ; the natives imagined that it was still impregnable ; the inhabitants of the country were disaffected towards the English ; and Doorjun Saul's popularity increased, when it was known that he intended to defend their favourite stronghold.

CHAP. XX.

A. D. 1825.

On the 10th of December, Lord Combermere appeared before Bhurtpore with an army of more than 20,000 men and a hundred pieces of artillery. Batteries were opened, but it was found that the thick mud walls of the fort could not be injured by shot and shell. It was, therefore, resolved to effect a breach by means of mining, and, after two or three failures, an enormous mine was exploded with terrible effect. The explosion caused some loss to the besiegers themselves, but it made a breach through which they were enabled to make an assault. In a few hours the citadel was in their possession ; and Doorjun Saul was taken prisoner, while he was attempting to escape. This success was opportune. The only fortress that had ever successfully resisted the English arms being taken, the hopes of those who disliked their rule were frustrated ; the discontented were overawed ; and perfect peace prevailed throughout the length and breadth of the land.

Siege and capture of Bhurtpore.

Jan. 18th, 1826.

CHAPTER XXI

WAR IN THE HIGHLANDS OF AFGHANISTAN.

FROM A. D. 1828 TO A. D. 1842.

Administration of Lord William Bentinck—Conquest of Coorg—Suppression of Suttee—Changes in the Company's Charter—Apprehensions of Russian invasion—Revolutions in Affghanistan—Embassy to Dost Mahomed—Persian invasion of Herat—Siege of Herat—War declared against Dost Mahomed—Tripartite Treaty—Invasion of Affghanistan—Installation of Shah Sujah at Candahar—Capture of Ghazni—Advance to Cabul—Return of the invading army—Return and surrender of Dost Mahomed—Delusive tranquillity in Affghanistan—Desertion and defeat of discontented chiefs—Insurrection at Cabul—Murder of Sir William Macnaghten—Disastrous retreat from Cabul—Arrival of Lord Ellenborough—Gallant defence of Jellalabad—Advance of Generals Pollock and Nott—Release of the English prisoners—Withdrawal of the troops to India.

THE next Governor-General was Lord William Bentinck, who had some years before been Governor of Madras. On the whole his administration was peaceful; but during it the kingdom of Coorg, the Rajah of which had behaved in an outrageous

manner both to his own subjects and to the Company, was subdued and annexed to the English dominions. Lord William Bentinck will, however, be best remembered by the exertions which he made in the suppression of Suttee, the cruel custom by which widows were permitted to burn themselves alive with the dead bodies of their husbands. He made the practice penal.

CHAP. XXI.
A. D. 1834.
Conquest of Coorg.
April 6th.
Suppression of Suttee.
Dec. 4th, 1829.

In 1833 great changes were made in the constitution of the East India Company, which had hitherto, while it governed India, held the exclusive right of trading with this country. The latter privilege was taken away; the trade thrown open; and the Company converted into a governing power alone. The charter under which the East India Company governed India was renewed for twenty years; but, in all other material respects, remained the same as it had been before.

Changes in the Company's Charter.
A. D. 1833.

In 1839 the peace, which had happily prevailed for several years, was broken by spirit-stirring events. We have in a previous page alluded to the fears that were felt regarding the designs of Russia upon the English possessions in the East. At the time of which we are writing they were at their height, and they were not without some foundation. The dimensions of the Russian Empire had wonderfully increased during the preceding fifty years, and had extended towards India, as well as in other directions. Its frontier on the fact, closer to Lahore than to St. conduct of the Russian govern-

Apprehensions of Russian invasion.

CHAP. XXI, agents likewise indicated, in some measure, what
 A. D. 1837. were their intentions on the subject. The latter
 were employed in sowing dissensions in Affghanis-
 tan and Persia, through which countries there is a
 practicable route to Hindostan. On the other hand,
 there was little danger to be apprehended, what-
 ever the designs of the Russian government might
 be, as the route is almost impassable for an army,
 and the Russians could, at the most, only raise
 disturbances and arouse fears on the frontiers of
 British India.

Revolutions in
 Affghanistan.

The state of Affghanistan was very unsettled. Shah
 Sujah, who had lately governed there, had been
 driven from his country and his throne by his brother
 Mahmud, and had taken refuge in the English
 territories. Mahmud owed his success to Futteh
 Khan, one of his ministers, whom he afterwards
 ungratefully and cruelly murdered. The brothers of
 the deceased minister, of whom Dost Mahomed Khan
 was the most able, revolted against Mahmud, and
 seized the greater part of his dominions, which they
 divided among themselves, leaving him to rule over
 the district of Herat alone. He died soon after-
 wards, and his son Kamran succeeded him at Herat.

Embassy to
 Dost Mahomed.

As Dost Mahomed possessed the chief power
 in Affghanistan, Lord Auckland, the new Governor-
 General, thought it right to send an ambassador
 to treat with him, nominally about commercial mat-
 ters, but in reality about subjects of greater import-
 ance. It was desirable to render him an ally of the
 English, and Affghanistan, a defensive barrier for

English, and Afghanistan, a defensive barrier for India. The ambassador was Captain Alexander Burnes. The mission, however, utterly failed, principally through Russian influence, and Captain Burnes returned to India without achieving the objects for which he had been sent to Afghanistan.

The Shah of Persia, who was also influenced by Russian counsels, at this time despatched an army to Herat with the object of taking that important city, which has appropriately been called 'the key to India.' He claimed the whole of Afghanistan, and the fall of Herat would have led to further movements against that country. Herat, however, was well defended. Eldred Pottinger, a young English officer, was there; and, as English officers have since done at Silistria and Kars, encouraged the garrison to deeds of valour by his energy and heroism. The Persian army was commanded by unskilful leaders, and, after a siege of nine months' duration, it was obliged to fall back completely baffled and defeated.

The English and Russian ambassadors were in the Persian camp; but the former was treated with great indignity. An English force was consequently sent to the island of Karack in the Persian Gulf, to demand satisfaction for the insult that had been offered to the representative of the British power; and the report of its arrival hastened the retreat of the Persian army from Herat.

As Dost Mahomed would not agree to his wishes by peaceful means, the Governor-General determined to enforce them by war. A treaty was accord-

CHAP. XXI.

A. D. 1847.

Siege of Herat.

Nov. 22nd, 1837
to Sep. 24th, 1839A force sent
to the Persian
Gulf.The Tripartite
Treaty.

June 26th.

CHAP. XXI. ingly entered into with Shah Sujah and with
 A. D. 1838. Runjeet Sing, the sovereign of Lahore, the objects
 of which were the invasion of Affghanistan and the
 restoration of the exiled monarch. An English army,
 called the Army of the Indus, was to advance into
 the highlands of Cabul by the way of Scinde and
 Beloochistan. It was to be composed of a force
 from Bengal; another from Bombay; and a third
 belonging to Shah Sujah, but commanded by Eng-
 lish officers. The whole was ultimately placed under
 the command of Sir John Keane.

Invasion of
 Affghanistan.

The Bengal column marched first, and it was not
 joined by the Bombay column until it had reached
 Candahar. The latter met with opposition from
 the Ameers of Scinde; but a reserve force put an
 effectual stop to their resistance by the capture of
 Kurrachee, an important town upon the coast of
 Scinde. The advance of both columns was harassing
 and fatiguing. The way was long; there was little
 water for man or beast; and continual annoyance
 was experienced from the fierce robbers, who lurked
 about the wild hills through which they had to
 pass. At Candahar, Shah Sujah was solemnly en-
 throned as King of Affghanistan, in the presence
 of the English army.

Restoration of
 Shah Sujah.
 Mar 8th, 1839

Capture of
 hazel.
 July 23rd.

The march was continued. Late on the evening
 of the 21st of July, the army encamped before the
 citadel of Ghazni, the birth-place of Mahmud, the
 first Mussulman conqueror of India, and on the 22nd
 the guns opened upon the fortress. A small party
 courageously approached the walls under cover of

the fire, and placed an enormous charge of powder under the Cabul gate, which was blown in by the explosion. The storming column immediately entered the town. A desperate hand to hand encounter ensued; but the town was taken, and the garrison of the citadel surrendered almost without a struggle. Perfect order and quiet were observed by the successful soldiers.

CHAP. XXI.
A. D. 1839.

The English soon afterwards proceeded to the city of Cabul, which passed into their possession peaceably; Dost Mahomed fled with a few followers into the wilds beyond the Oxus; and Shah Sujah was reinstated in his former capital, surrounded by English bayonets, but without the good wishes or the welcome of his subjects.

Occupation of
Cabul.
Aug. 6th.

After the restoration of Shah Sujah, the greater part of the army was withdrawn. A force which was considered large enough to keep the country tranquil, was left at Cabul; and Mr. Macnaghten, who a short time afterwards was made a barronet, was appointed diplomatic agent at the court of the Affghan king.

Return of the
army.

The English troops remained two years at Cabul. The temper of the savage tribes in Affghanistan, and their bitter hatred of the people who had given them a king, were shewn on every possible occasion. English officers and soldiers were attacked whenever they ventured to any distance from their comrades. Lawless chiefs gathered their followers around them, and offered resistance when there was any probability of success. Parties sent out for sup-

State of pub-
lic feeling in
Affghanistan.

CHAP. XXI. plies were surrounded by crowds of fierce enemies,
 A. D. 1840. and were only brought out of the conflicts that ensued with severe loss. But these were only desultory attacks; and the quiet at Cabul itself was so great that many of the English were joined by their wives and families, who resided with them near the city.

Return of Dost
 Mahomed.

Dost Mahomed, who had been thrown into prison by the ruler of Bokhara, whither he had fled for refuge, contrived to escape, and returned to make another attempt to drive the invaders from the country. Many of the Affghan chieftains joined him, and a force under Sir Robert Sale was consequently sent to oppose his progress. Dost Mahomed's followers were defeated at a place called Purwan; but the nature of the country prevented the fugitives from being followed, except by a regiment of Bengal Cavalry, which, after it had continued the pursuit for some distance, was attacked by a party of Dost Mahomed's horsemen. Upon the order to charge being given, the English officers galloped towards the enemy, fully expecting that their men would follow; but the sepoys' hearts failed them, and they ran away, leaving the officers to fight alone amongst their numerous foes.

Battle of Pur-
 wan.
 Nov. 2nd.

Surrender of
 Dost Mahomed.
 Nov. 3rd.

But Dost Mahomed had been defeated, and hope deserted him. On the following afternoon, as the English Envoy at Cabul was returning from a ride, a single horseman galloped up to him, and, to his astonishment, said that Dost Mahomed had arrived to surrender himself a prisoner. The messenger had

scarcely concluded his speech, when Dost Mahomed himself rode up, and, dismounting, presented Sir William Macnaghten with his sword. Every kindness and consideration was shown to the Afghan chief, who was sent to India, where he was detained in a light and easy captivity.

CHAP. XXI.
A. D. 1840.

The following months passed in comparative tranquillity, but at the beginning of October, some chiefs deserted Shah Sujah's Court, and raised the standard of revolt. As they occupied the important pass of Khurd Cabul, a force under Sir Robert Sale, which was on its way to Jellalabad, was sent against them. The insurgents were strongly posted; part of them defended a barrier thrown across the road, and others were scattered on the steep heights around: but the English soldiers drove them back, and cleared the ghant of its defenders. But resistance was still offered. The force was attacked both by day and night; but at a place called Jugduluk the enemy was gallantly repulsed; and the army reached Jellalabad, which was instantly surrounded by the foe. The old and crazy walls of that place were put into the best possible state of defence, and Sir Robert Sale determined to hold it to the last. While he was thus employed, he received orders to return to Cabul, where a serious disturbance had arisen; but he declined to do so, as the party under his command was not in a fit condition for the conflicts which such a march would entail. He remained at Jellalabad: and he and his brave soldiers defended the place in a manner worthy of the English name, until brighter days returned.

Revolt of Af-
ghan chiefs.
Oct. 1840.

CHAP. XXI. We return to Cabul, where sad events had hap-
 A. D. 1840. pened. The force there was partly stationed in the
 Insurrection at Cabul. cantonments which were situated at the distance of
 Nov. 2nd. three miles, and partly in the Bala Hissar, or the
 royal palace, which was in close proximity to the
 town. Some of the English officers lived within
 the walls of Cabul. On the 2nd of November the
 whole place was in an uproar. The houses of the
 English were attacked; Sir Alexander Burnes and
 other officers were murdered; the Shah's treasury
 was plundered; the officers' houses were set on fire;
 and yet, while all these occurrences were taking
 place, nothing effectual was done to quell the
 tumult.

Increase of the revolt. On the morning of the 3rd, some troops which
 had been stationed at Khurd Cabul came in, after
 fighting their way from that place. The English
 were now in fact besieged in their cantonments and
 in the Bala Hissar. A small tower and fort were
 taken by the Affghans, who were pouring in from
 the adjacent districts, and no effort was made to dis-
 lodge them. On the following day an attack was
 made on a fort in which the principal supplies were
 kept. An officer and a few sepoy were in it; but
 no support was given to them, and they were
 obliged to retreat. The chief command was held
 by General Elphinstone, an old and infirm officer,
 who seemed incapable of action; and General Shel-
 ton, the second in command, was summoned from
 the Bala Hissar to assist him.

Attack on Be- Nothing was done by either party for several
 mauroo. days; but, on the 22nd, the English attacked Be-

manoeuvres, a village from which they had hitherto drawn supplies. They were defeated. On the following day, an attempt was made to retrieve the disaster; but it equally failed. There were tales taken in great numbers; but, although some fought nobly, the greater number of the troops behaved in a shameful manner.

Negotiations were now opened with Mahomed Akber Khan, a son of Doct Mahomed. His terms were humiliating in the extreme, yet they were listened to. On the 23rd of December, Sir William Macnaghten, who had before treated with Akber Khan, was invited to an audience with that chief; and he went to the retired spot which was named as the place of consultation, accompanied by three officers. While he was talking to the Afghan chief, a number of armed men drew round the party. The English Envoy begged that they might be withdrawn; but his request was refused. Almost directly afterwards, the men rushed forward. A scuffle ensued. Sir William Macnaghten and one of his companions were shot; the former, it is believed, by Akber Khan himself. The others were bound, and carried away prisoners, and the bodies of the murdered men were savagely hacked and mangled.

Nothing was done to avenge this infamous deed; but negotiations were continued, and the force was allowed to retreat from Cabul, on condition of paying largely for the favour, Akber Khan agreeing to ensure their safety on the march. Four officers were surrendered as hostages, and the sick and wounded left behind.

CHRON. IND.
A. D. 1841.

See also
p. 17, 18, 19.

Murder of Sir
W. Macnaghten
Dec. 23rd.

Renewed ne-
gotiations with
Akber Khan.

CHAP. XXI. On the 6th of January the retreat began. The
 A. D. 1814. crowd moved out of the cantonments in a con-
 fused, disorderly manner, the fighting men being
 mingled with the numerous camp followers. The
 road lay through steep and narrow mountain passes,
 which were covered with deep, untrodden snow. As
 the march continued, thousands dropped down on
 the way-side to die of cold and hunger; others fell
 by the bullets of the Affghans, who hovered about
 the retreating force, and fired upon it from their
 places of concealment in the crevices of the moun-
 tains; the difficulties of the march increased; the
 work of destruction was nearly done; weariness,
 hunger, and cold destroyed those who had escaped
 from the vengeance of the Affghans. A few tried
 to force their way to Jellalabad, but only one soli-
 tary straggler reached that town.

Preparations
 for retrieving
 the disaster.

Sir Robert Sale, however, still held out bravely,
 he and his comrades gaining the well-earned name
 of "The Illustrious Garrison;" a force was as-
 sembling under General Pollock at Peshawur; and
 General Nott held Candahar, where he had defeat-
 ed the enemy on the 12th of January.

Arrival of Lord
 Ellenborough.
 Feb. 28th.

Early in 1842, Lord Auckland retired from the
 office of Governor-General, and Lord Ellenborough
 succeeded him. After some hesitation, the new
 Governor-General resolved to order an advance
 into Cabul to retrieve the disasters which had been
 experienced in that country, and to release the
 English ladies and officers who were still the
 prisoners of Akber Khan. Ghazni had been re-
 taken by the Affghans, who had treated the Eng-

lish officers captured in that place with great cruelty; and this barbarity afforded another inducement for exertion.

CHAP. XXI.
A. D. 1842.

We must now return to Sir Robert Sale at Jellalabad. His small force had employed themselves diligently in repairing the walls, and securing the place against attacks; but the fruits of their labour were destroyed by an earthquake, and all had to be begun again. Cheerfully, however, they set to work, and soon restored the defences. By the time that all was in readiness for the enemy, Akber Khan approached to blockade the town; and several spirited skirmishes took place with his troops. On the 7th of April, a grand sortie was made on the Affghan camp: all the enemy's guns were taken, the encampment fired, and Akber Khan forced to make a precipitate retreat. This victory was gained by only a handful of troops over a numerous enemy; but it was saddened by the loss of Colonel Dennie, who had distinguished himself by conspicuous gallantry throughout the campaign. Captain, afterwards Sir Henry, Havelock commanded the right attack.

The Illustrous
Garrison.
From Nov
13th 1841 to Apr
16th, 1842.

Nine days afterwards, General Pollock reached Jellalabad. He had advanced from Peshawur; stormed the Khyber Pass with perfect success and little loss; and had come to relieve the illustrious garrison. He remained for some months at Jellalabad, before he was permitted to go forward. On the 20th of August, however, he began an advance with all his forces to Cabul. Near Gundamuk he drove the enemy from some forts and a position on

General Pollock's advance
to Cabul.

CHAP. XXI. the surrounding hills; at Jugdulak, where, only a
 A. D. 1842. few months before, the English had suffered severely
 in the retreat from Cabul, the Affghans, who crowd-
 ed round the advancing army, and fired upon it from
 the heights, were put to flight by a few English
 soldiers; at Tezeen a harder struggle took place, and
 was followed by a more decided victory; and, on
 the 15th of September, an English army, triumph-
 ant and inspirited, encamped again at Cabul.

General Nott's
 advance.

General Nott had likewise advanced from Candahar. On the 30th of August he defeated a force under Shums-oodd-een, the Governor of Ghazni; on the 6th of September, Ghazni was abandoned by the enemy; on the 14th and 15th he drove the Affghans, who had assembled in large numbers to oppose him, from the defiles through which he was obliged to pass; and soon afterwards joined General Pollock at the capital.

Release of the
 prisoners.

As soon as Akber Khan heard of General Pollock's advance, he ordered his prisoners to be removed towards the interior of the country, and threatened to sell them as slaves to the barbarous chiefs of Koordistan. The success of the English had, however, an effect on the mind of the Affghan to whose charge the captive had been entrusted; and for a large bribe he permitted them to escape. As they were returning to Cabul, they were met by Sir Richmond Blakeney, who was attended by a chosen band of horsemen; and, upon their arrival at the capital, they had the happy task of finding themselves once more among their own people. A force under Sir Robert Sale, which had with

daughter were among the captives, had been sent out to welcome and protect them. Amidst the rejoicings, and tears, and congratulations of every one present, from the General to the private soldier, they were conducted to the English camp.

Little more remained to be done. The disgrace had been taken away; the prisoners welcomed back; and the power of the English shewn in victory and moderation. It had been resolved to withdraw all the troops from Affghaniatan, so soon as success would permit them to do so without dishonour, as Shah Sujah had been murdered by one of his own chiefs, and an armament was no longer needed for his support. The army, therefore, returned to India, after the towns of Istalif and Charekar had been captured and destroyed: and the chiefs of Affghanistan were left to fight their own battles, and to carry on their own feuds, without further interference on the part of the English.

CHAP. XXI.

A. D. 1842.

Final triumph
and withdrawal
of the army.

Oct. 12th.

CHAPTER XXII.

OCCURRENCES IN SCINDE AND GWALIOR.

FROM A. D. 1842 TO A. D. 1844.

The Ameers of Scinde—Ill-feeling against the English Government—Infraction of treaties—A new treaty offered for their acceptance—Attack on the Residency—Battle of Meeanee—Surrender of Hyderabad, the capital of Scinde—Battle of Hyderabad or Dubba—Final subjugation of the Ameers—Conquest and pacification of the country—State of affairs at Gwalior—The Maharajah dies childless—Adoption and installation of a relative—Mama Sahib appointed Regent—Intrigues at the Maharajah's Court—Dada Khasjee Walla appointed in Mama Sahib's stead—The English Resident leaves the Court—State of the Mahratta army—Advance of the English troops—Failure of negotiations—Battle of Maharajpore—Battle of Punniar—Treaty with the Maharajah—Return of Lord Ellenborough to Calcutta—Is recalled by the Court of Directors.

THE war in Affghanistan was followed by another war, of which it was partly the occasion. We have mentioned the opposition which the Ameers of Scinde offered to the advance of the English forces from Bombay, when they were proceeding to Cabul. It was speedily put down at the time; but the

march of troops through Scinde left an ill-feeling CHAP. XX
 against the English Government in the minds of A. D. 1842
 the rulers of that country. Their dissatisfaction
 manifested itself in their corresponding with the
 enemies of the English, when the reverses at Cabul
 took place, in their assembling bands of armed fol-
 lowers, and in their breaking engagements to
 which they had before agreed by treaty. They
 were, in fact, prepared to take advantage of the
 disasters in Affghanistan; but the victorious ad-
 vance of Generals Pollock and Nott deprived them
 of an opportunity for resistance. There was at
 this time a force in Scinde, which was ready to act
 on the offensive, and to the command of which Sir
 Charles Napier was appointed in October 1842.

Scinde is watered by the broad and noble river
 Indus, and negotiations had, at various times, been
 carried on between the English Government and
 the Ameers or chiefs of the country regarding the
 navigation of this river. It had been arranged by
 treaty that no tolls should be levied on English
 articles of commerce, except such as had been first
 approved by English officers. This agreement was
 broken: but, at the same time, there were plausible
 reasons for the conduct of the Ameers, as well as for
 their hostile actions. These chieftains were not
 desirous of the English connection; an English
 agent was appointed to reside at the city of Hydera-
 bad in Scinde against their wishes; and a subsidiary
 force was stationed in their territories. They had,
 in fact, been reduced from perfect independence to
 the same position as the other dependant States of
 India.

Opposition
 the Ameers
 the English
 vernment.

CHAP. XXII. In consequence of the suspicious behaviour of the
 A. D. 1843. Ameers, the Governor-General prepared a new
 treaty for their acceptance. The following were
 the terms of this treaty. A certain amount of
 territory was to be ceded to the English instead of
 the tribute then paid to them; the Ameers were
 to furnish fuel for the English steamers on the
 Indus; and they were to give up the privilege of
 coining to the English Government. The Ameers
 were very unwilling to enter into this agreement;
 but, after some time, Colonel Outram, the British
 Commissioner, persuaded them to affix their seals
 to it.

Attack on the
 Commissioner.
 Feb. 15th.

There was a strong expression of ill-feeling shewn
 towards the Commissioner, as he retired from his
 interview with the Ameers; and on the following
 day his house was attacked. It was surrounded on
 three sides by the insurgents, the fourth being kept
 clear by the fire of a small war steamer which was
 anchored near the place. For four hours the escort
 kept their assailants at bay, and then retreated in
 good order to the English vessel.

Battle
 of Meeanee.
 Feb. 17th.

The force under Sir Charles Napier was close at
 hand. In two days it arrived at Meeanee near Hy-
 drabad, where the Ameers, who were all up in arms,
 were awaiting him with a large army of brave and
 hardy men. Their position was very formidable.
 Their main body was drawn up in the dry, sandy
 bed of the river Pulailee, where they were shelter-
 ed at the beginning of the engagement by a steep
 bank; their left flank was protected by a thick
 wood, which was surrounded by a high wall; and

their right by a village and ravine. The enemy CHAP.
occupied both the village and the wood. The A. D.
English army was not one-tenth of the size of that
opposed to it; but it was ready to do and dare any
thing.

As the English approached, a severe fire was CHAP.
opened upon them from the enemy's guns. It was A. D.
answered by the artillery of the English, which was
stationed on their right; and a few skirmishers were
sent forward in that quarter to clear the way of the
enemy; but they were obliged to return without ac-
complishing their object, and the infantry then ad-
vanced to storm the river-banks. They advanced val-
iantly to do the appointed work, but it proved a long
and arduous task. A fierce hand-to-hand struggle
took place. As soon as the foremost ranks of the
enemy were driven back, others crowded forward to
take their posts. Defending their heads with thick,
broad shields, the Beloochees dashed among their
assailants and fought with savage desperation. Ex-
pecting no quarter, they gave none; but closed with
their opponents, and struggled frantically to the last.
Even the bayonet, on that rough and rugged ground,
failed to force them back.

For fully three hours the deadly conflict con- CHAP.
tinued; but at last the main body of the enemy gave A. D.
way, and retired before the glittering array of
English bayonets, but the Beloochees retreated, as
they had fought, slowly, sullenly, and bravely; more
with the air of conquering, than of conquered men.
Their retreat was quickened by a charge of the ca-
valry, which had succeeded in crossing the river
near the village on the left. Next morning six of the

HAP. XXII. Ameers presented their swords to the English General, and two days afterwards Hyderabad, the capital of Scinde, was surrendered.

Battle of Hyderabad. March 24th. Opposition was not, however, at an end. Enemies were still in the field, and were advancing towards Hyderabad in force. They had reached the village of Dubba, which is situated about four miles from that city, and the English army, now largely reinforced, proceeded to attack them. Their position was similar to the one at Meeanee. They were posted on the banks of two canals running parallel to each other, with their right on the river Fulailee; and they had considerably strengthened the natural defence, of this position. The battle began with a deadly fire from the English artillery, which threw the enemy into some confusion. A charge of cavalry was then made on his left flank, where it was discovered that many of the Beloochees had taken to flight, the horsemen riding nobly across the canal, and scattering the fugitives before them. At the same time the Queen's 22nd stormed the entrenchments and carried them gallantly, reserving their fire until they arrived within a short distance of their opponents; while the 21st and 25th Regiments Bombay Native Infantry attacked the adjoining entrenchments. The three regiments then advanced together, and, supported by the horse artillery, drove the enemy from the village on his extreme right, where he had rallied in considerable force. After a severe conflict, he fled along the bank of the Fulailee, pursued by a portion of the cavalry. The Beloochees fought almost

an valiantly as at Meeanee: and the loss of the victors was severe.

CHAP. XXI.

A. D. 1843.

The war did not continue much longer. Some of the chiefs were still up in arms, the principal of whom were Shere Mahomed and Shah Mahomed; but they could not assemble any large number of troops. The former was defeated by Major Jacob, and forced to flee; and the latter was taken prisoner during an encounter in which his small party was quickly put to flight.

Final rebellion of the Ameers.

The country was in the power of the English. It remained in their possession, and Sir Charles Napier was appointed Commissioner on behalf of the English Government. The people, it is said, were rejoiced at the change of masters, as the Ameers had been unjust and ungenerous in their rule. Be that, however, as it may, the inhabitants have been gainers by the change. The state of the province has improved; factions between rival chiefs are at an end; commerce has increased; and one of the most flourishing ports in the East has risen during the last few years in the once jealously guarded and inaccessible territories of Scinde.

Annexation of Scinde.

The next cause of anxiety to the Governor-General was the condition of the independent Mahratta state of Gwalior. Dowlut Row Scindia, the once formidable foe of the English, with whom treaties of alliance had been made by General Wellesley and the Marquis of Hastings, died in 1827 without any offspring. He was succeeded by one of his relatives; who died childless in February 1843.

Affairs of Gwalior.

CHAP. XXII. The widow of the deceased sovereign adopted
A. D. 1843. distant relation of her late husband. He was

Installation of a new sovereign. enthroned as the Maharajah of Gwalior; and, the new king was only eight years old, a nobleman named Mama Sahib was appointed to conduct the affairs of government as Regent, according to the express wishes of the English Resident.

Intrigues at the Maharajah's Court. Various intrigues followed. Ambitious men who were eager for power, and the Maharanee herself opposed Mama Sahib in every way; and, after he had filled the office of Regent only three months he was removed, and was obliged to take refuge in the British territories. A person, called the Dada Khasjee Walla, who in every way opposed the English interests, succeeded him. As the Regent whom the English Government had selected was thus removed, and another appointed without consulting the Resident, in direct violation of the treaty with Scindia, that officer was ordered to leave the court at Gwalior, in token of the Governor-General's displeasure.

Confusion in Scindia's court and country. But the intrigues and rivalry at the Mahratta court did not cease. None of the chiefs could trust his neighbour, and, as might naturally have been expected, the country was in a very disturbed state, in consequence of the confusion in the government.

State of the Mahratta army. The Mahratta army, which was very numerous and strong, was ready for plunder or revolt. The Mahratta soldiers were kept together by no bonds of discipline, were scarcely under any control, and, confident in their strength, were anxious and eager

for warfare. There were a few Europeans among the officers; but almost all of them were at this time removed, which act alone shewed the power and the spirit of the army.

The Governor-General sternly remonstrated with the Maharanee and her advisers; but, as his warning was unheeded, it became necessary at last, for the safety and tranquillity of the surrounding country, to order the advance of an army which had been assembled a few months before at Cawnpore, and which was placed under the command of Sir Hugh Gough. The Governor-General himself accompanied it into the Mahratta territories. As soon as this step was taken, the Dada Khasjee Walla was surrendered to the English; but the English forces could not be recalled, until it was evident that the country was quiet and the government secure. They had approached the river Chumbal: and the Mahratta chiefs repeatedly requested the Governor-General not to permit the advance of the army across that river, as the Mahratta troops, who were so entirely without discipline that they could not be restrained, would look upon such a movement as hostile, which would be contrary to the desires of the English, who professed that they had come to restore tranquillity, as friends of the Maharajah. The Governor-General, however, appointed a certain day for an interview with that prince, and informed him, that, in the event of his refusing to comply with this request, the English troops would cross the Chumbal.

CHAP.
A. D.

Advance
English

CHAP. XXII.

A. D. 1843.
Battle of Ma-
harajpore.

Dec. 29th.

The Maharajah did not arrive on the appointed day, and the army advanced. It was still supposed however that the affair would be amicably arranged as Bappoo Setowlea, a chief thought to be friendly to the English, had been sent, on the part of the Mahrattas, to negotiate; but he quitted the English camp to join the Mahratta army, and to take command of a portion of it. On the 29th of December, the British troops under the immediate command of Sir Hugh Gough came in sight of the enemy, who were drawn up before the village of Maharajpore. The Mahrattas occupied a very strong position, which was defended by a powerful array of cannon. These guns did great damage to the English, who drove the enemy from them into the village, where a fierce encounter took place, the Mahrattas tossing their matchlock away, and fighting hand to hand with their opponents. General Valiant at this time took Maharajpore in reverse to support the troops which were already engaged. Having forced the enemy to retire from the village with the loss of twenty-eight guns, he moved forward, and attacked three formidable entrenchments at a place called Chonda. The Mahrattas fought in a most determined manner; stood to their guns until the very last; and were cut down at their posts, without an attempt to flee. The victory was complete, but it was dearly won; for the loss in men and officers was very great.

Battle of Pan-
F.

Dec. 29th

Upon the same day another battle was fought at Panniar, by the division of the army under General Grey, which had entered the Gwalior territory by

a different route. The Mahrattas, who were posted on the hills surrounding the English army, were chased from height to height; their guns were taken; and they were forced to flee from the field of battle.

CHAP. X.

A. D. 1818.

These two victories effectually persuaded the Maharanee and her advisers to accede to the Governor-General's wishes. It was arranged that the government of Gwalior should be conducted by a council, until the Maharajah became of an age to take charge of it himself; that the counsels of the English Resident should be implicitly followed; that the Mahratta army should be considerably reduced, that an English force should be stationed at Gwalior, and be paid out of the revenues of that State; and that all power should be taken out of the hands of the Maharanee, to whom an ample allowance was granted to support her rank and dignity. A treaty containing these terms was agreed to by the Maharajah and the Mahratta noblemen.

Treaty
the young
harajah.

Jan. 1818.

Having thus restored peace to Gwalior, and, by his prompt conduct, checked the spread of feelings hostile to the English authority, Lord Ellenborough returned to Calcutta. But he did not stay in India long after the war had ended. The Court of Directors disapproved of his conduct both in Scinde and Gwalior, and were displeased at his supposed delight in war rather than in the quiet pursuits of peace, and they recalled him from the high station of Governor-General, without the sanction or approval of the Home Government. Sir Henry Hardinge was appointed his

Recall
Lord
borough.

MAP. XXII. Lord Ellenborough had, however, restored to
 A. D. 1814. India the blessings of peace by successful war; he
 Lord Ellenbo- had upheld the power of the English in rebellious
 rgh's achieve- States; and, even if his administration as Governor-
 mts. General was undeserving of grateful remembrance
 in other respects, it ought never to be forgotten
 that he vindicated the honour of his country's name
 in the mountains of Affghanistan, retrieved the
 disasters suffered there, and restored the English
 captives to their friends and freedom.

CHAPTER XXIII.

FIRST CONTEST IN THE PUNJAB.

FROM A. D. 1844 TO A. D. 1847.

Arrival of Sir Henry Hardinge—The Sikhs—Death of Runjeet Sing—State of the Punjab—Position of the Sikh Government—Power of the army—Invasion of British India—Advance of English troops—Battle of Moodkee—The Sikhs' entrenched camp—Battle of Ferozeshah—A night on the battle-field—The victory—Gallantry and unselfishness of the Governor General—The Sikhs recross the Sutlej—Sir Harry Smith sent to Ludiana—Battle of Aliwal—Preparations for the final struggle—Battle of Sohraon—The English army cross the Sutlej—The advance to Lahore—Golak Sing negotiates—Interview between the Maharajah and the Governor-General—Treaty with the Maharajah—Conquest of the Sikhs—Conclusion of the war—Close of Lord Hardinge's administration.

SIR Henry Hardinge arrived in India with a sincere desire to preserve peace; but he soon found himself engaged in war. New enemies invaded the English possessions, and it was necessary to conquer and expel them.

CAP. XXIII.

A. D. 1844.

The Sikhs.

These foes were the Sikhs. We have not had occasion to mention this people often in the preceding pages; but, during the progress of the British Empire in India, they had been gradually increasing in power and importance. This sect arose in the fifteenth century, under Nanak, a quiet and peaceable teacher of a mixed Hindu and Mahomedan religion; but they were persecuted by Aurangzib, and, under a leader named Gooroo Govind they laid aside their primitive character, became a warlike, as well as a religious power, and gained a large portion of territory during the decline of the Mogul Empire. In the reign of Runjeet Sing, they acquired great strength. Their army was well drilled and disciplined under the guidance of French and Italian officers; the artillery, in particular, was brought into a state of great perfection; and the Sikh soldiers were generally victorious over the enemies against whom they contended. Runjeet Sing, with whom the English Government were in alliance, died in 1839, when the Affghan war was in progress. Since his death the country had been in a state of utter confusion. Anarchy, conspiracies, plots were frequent in the capital: foul murders, were of continual occurrence: and, amidst these scenes of tumult, the army was all-powerful.

Position of
Sikh
Government.

In 1845, Dhuleep Sing, a boy of tender age, was the Maharajah of Lahore. His mother, who acted as Regent for him, had, after a revolution at the beginning of the year, made her brother the vizier; but he was murdered in a similar revolution, and the power of the office, though not the name

was held by an influential chief named Rajah Golab Sing. At this time of turbulence and disquiet, the Sikh army, eager for warfare, and desirous of employment, determined to invade the British dominions. The Queen-mother and her party encouraged the idea, in order that they might get rid of their unruly subjects. Golab Sing pretended to favour the army in its desire; but in reality kept himself from any acts of hostility, until he could observe the course events would take. CHAP. I
A. D.

In consequence of the suspicious movements of the Sikhs, the Governor-General sent reinforcements to the frontier, where the English had two stations named Ludiana and Ferozepore, and proceeded himself to the menaced quarter. On the 12th of December, the Sikhs crossed the Sutlej, entered the British territories "without a shadow of provocation," and proceeded to form an entrenched camp at Ferozeshah, about ten miles from Ferozepore.

The English troops at Ludiana, under the command of Sir Hargreaves, were ordered to advance as rapidly as possible to join the force at Ludiana. On the 16th of December they arrived at the village of Moodkee, about ten miles from the Sikh camp, but they had not had time to encamp, when news was received that the Sikh army was on the way to attack them. The English baggage were soon dispersed, and the army was entrenched out in battle order on the plain. The ground was level, and covered with low vegetation, and the Sikh army, having been informed of the English position, advanced upon them.

CHAP. XXIII. artillery. The latter opened fire upon the English
 A. D. 1845. as they advanced, which was warmly answered.
 The English cavalry was then sent forward to attack
 both flanks of the enemy: and, while he was
 thrown into confusion by these movements, the in-
 fantry advanced, drove the Sikhs from position
 after position, and captured all their guns. The
 conflict was continued for some little time by star-
 light, and at last ended in favour of the English.
 They had before despatched their new enemies; but
 in this first battle they found that the Sikhs fought
 with great skill and distinguished valour. The loss
 on their side was heavy, and among the slain was
 Sir Robert Sale, the hero of Jelalabad.
 The Sikhs retreated to their entrenched camp at
 Ferozeshah. The English, reinforced by the division
 from Ferozepore, attacked them on the 21st,
 in their fortifications, which were great and very formidable,
 being defended by more than a hundred pieces
 of cannon. The entrenched camp was in the shape
 of a parallelogram, against the longer side of which the
 assault was made. Under fire of their artillery, the
 which was far weaker than that of the Sikhs, the
 English infantry stormed those fearful batteries,
 and forced their way into the enemy's camp. A
 terrific conflict ensued. The Sikhs were maddened
 with enthusiasm and religious zeal: and they fought
 with savage desperation, killing every wounded
 soldier and sepoy who lay helplessly on the
 ground: and the horrors of the battle were in-
 creased by the explosion of several mines.

Meanwhile Sir John Littler's division, which

CHAP. XXIII. forced the Sikhs back, and captured seventy-eight
 A. D. 1815. of their cannon. But as soon as one portion of the Sikh army had been conquered, another arose: a reserve of 30,000 men under the Sikh chief, Tej Sing, came forward to oppose the victors, and to recapture the entrenchments. Again, supported on either side by the cavalry, those heroic men charged on. Tej Sing was routed, and the whole of his army forced to cross the Sutlej, and to flee, discomfited and beaten.

Gallantry and
 unselfishness of
 Sir Henry Har-
 dinge.

Never, perhaps, have English soldiers fought so gloriously as at Perozeshah: never, most certainly, had they more heroic leaders. The Governor-General not only shared the privations of the men on the battle-field, but he showed every kindness in his power to those who had fought with him, and especially to the wounded. Passing from man to man, he cheered them with words of hope; if any were in want of comforts, he supplied them himself; if any were desponding, he showed them his armless sleeve, and spoke to them of their own dear home.

The Sikhs re-
 cross the Sutlej.

The English army remained where it had won this dearly-bought triumph. It could not advance to Lahore, until it could be supplied with more artillery and strengthened by reinforcements. The Sikhs took advantage of the delay, which they thought arose from indecision, and, crossing the Sutlej, again invaded the British territories. More battles were to be fought. The enemy menaced Ludiana. The Commander-in-chief, therefore, sent Sir Harry Smith with a division to defend that town. Sir Harry Smith met with the Sikhs here and there upon the road:

but not in great force. A few skirmishes took place, and the English were not always successful.

CHAP. XX

A. D. 18

But these actions were comparatively trifling. Ludiana was relieved; and, with the troops at that place added to his own, Sir Harry Smith marched out to meet the enemy at Aliwal. His troops were scarcely half the number of the Sikhs, who had fifty-six guns and were strongly entrenched behind earth-works. As the English advanced, a severe fire was opened upon them, during which Sir Harry Smith ordered them to halt that he might better ascertain the exact position of the enemy. Having learnt that, he moved forward again, and stormed the village of Aliwal, which was the key of the Sikh position. That place was speedily carried; and the enemy was driven across the Sutlej in precipitate flight, leaving his baggage, ammunition, stores, and guns to fall into the hands of the victors. The Sikhs fought boldly. In a charge of the 16th Lancers, they met the advancing horsemen with sword and target, and attacked them hand to hand. After this battle, Sir Harry Smith rejoined the main body of the army.

Battle of
Aliwal.

Jan. 25th

But great numbers of the enemy were still on the left bank of the Sutlej, where they were employed in strengthening their position at Sohraon, which had more the appearance of a fortress than of a camp. Meanwhile heavy ordnance, ammunition, and reinforcements were brought up to the English; length all was ready for an attack and on towards Lahore.

Preparations
of the British
and the Sikhs

CHAP. XXIII. Very early in the morning of the 10th of A. D. 1846. February, the troops were under arms for the assault.

Battle of Sobraon. A thick mist was over all, but as it began to clear

Feb. 10th. away, the English guns opened fire. For three hours nothing was heard but the roar of the cannon, and the whirl of shells and rockets, to which the enemy replied ineffectually. But the cavalry and infantry were not to remain spectators only, for the fire, although severe, was not sufficient to destroy the fortifications, or to induce the Sikhs to leave them. The English infantry dashed forward to storm the earth-works, when a sanguinary combat ensued. The cannon of the Sikhs inflicted great injury on the assailants, who, in some places, were obliged to retire over and over again, until, at length the indomitable courage of the English prevailed, and, marching up to the very muzzles of the guns, they carried them at the point of the bayonet. The cavalry, in the meantime, rode by twos and threes through small openings in the entrenchments, and, forming upon the opposite side, charged the Sikh gunners at their posts. The Sikhs fled. Borne down by their opponents, they crowded towards the river, under a heavy fire from the horse artillery. Some fell by the deadly missiles; others were drowned in attempting to cross the stream; and few reached Lahore. The Sikh army that had boasted of invading India, and of vanquishing the English, was completely conquered.

Advance to Lahore. The evening after the battle, part of the English army crossed the Sutlej. In two or three days it arrived at Kussoor, not very far from Lahore. At that place Golab Sing, who was sent by the

Regent to negotiate, met the Governor-General. CHAP. XXI
His first desire was to stop the advance of the A. D. 184
English forces; but Sir Henry Hardinge would
not listen to this proposition—the humiliation of
the Sikhs must be complete, and the English army
must dictate terms at the capital. The young
Maharajah came to the English camp to have an
interview with the Governor-General, who treated
him with every kindness and respect; and a few
days afterwards he was escorted to his palace by the
officers of the English troops, who had advanced to
Lahore. The citadel was garrisoned by them, and
the town passed tranquilly into their possession.

A treaty was signed on the 9th of March. A Treaty w
the Maharajah
March 9th.
A large sum of money was paid to the British Go-
vernment for the expenses of the war; the terri-
tory which forms the triangle between the Beas
and the Sutlej was given up to the English; the
army was disbanded; all the artillery which had
not been taken in the recent battles, was surren-
dered; and, as the Lahore Government was unable to
pay the whole of the larger sum of money required, a
further portion of territory was given up, which was
afterwards presented to Golarab Sing, with whom a
separate treaty of alliance was made, in consequence
of his neutrality during the war, and of his services
in bringing the treaty with the Maharajah to a
favourable conclusion.

The Sikhs were thus thoroughly conquered. They Conquest
the Sikhs.
had invaded India; they were repulsed, and their
own country invaded in return: they had

CHAP. XXIII. for victory and plunder; they were subdued, and
 A. D. 1846. their own territories reduced: they had dreamed
 of marching to Calcutta, and driving the English
 from the land; they were beaten in every battle,
 and their own capital filled with English troops.
 But their spirit was not yet broken, and it re-
 quired another war to bring them into perfect sub-
 mission.

Conclusion
 of Lord Hard-
 inge's adminis-
 tration.

At the request of some of the Sikh chieftains a
 force of 10,000 men was left at Lahore: the rest re-
 turned to India, and the first war in the Punjab
 was at an end. The remainder of Lord Hardinge's
 stay in India was spent in promoting the welfare of
 the people given to his charge and in the quiet-
 ness of peace.

CHAPTER XXIV.

CONQUEST OF THE PUNJAB AND PEGU.

FROM A. D. 1848 TO A. D. 1856.

Commencement of Lord Dalhousie's administration—Insurrection at Moultan—Intrigues at Lahore—Lieut. Edwards' energetic proceedings—Repulse of Moolraj—Battle of Kineyree—Battle of Suddoosam—General insurrection in the Punjab—Shere Sing's defection—Siege of Moultan raised—Engagement at Ramnuggur—Battle of Chillianwalla—Fall of Moultan—Battle of Gujarat—Annexation of the Punjab—War with Burmah—Defence of Pegu—Character of the Burmese war—Advance to Prome—Annexation of Pegu—Lord Dalhousie's policy—Treaty with the Nizam—Nagpore—Condition of Oude—Disturbances—Annexation of Oude—Departure of Lord Dalhousie—Social improvements during his administration—Changes in the Company's Charter.

LORD DALHOUSIE began his administration as Governor-General with the prospect of a firm and lasting peace ; but he had not been long in India before disturbances arose in the Punjab, which ended

CHAP. XXIV. in a second struggle with our brave and desperate
 A. D. 1849. enemies, the Sikhs. Lalla Moolraj, the governor of
 Insurrection Moulton. Moulton, the capital of a district which is situated
 between the rivers Indus and Sutlej, had, for some
 time past, been intriguing with his fellow-country-
 men at Lahore, and inciting them to rise against the
 English troops, and to expel them from that town,
 were they had remained at the request of the
 principal Sikh leaders. It was, therefore, considered
 necessary to depose him. A chief named Sirdar
 Khan Sing was appointed governor in his stead;
 and Mr. Vans Agnew, a Bengal civilian, and Mr.
 Anderson of the Bombay army, were deputed to
 accompany the new governor to Moulton, as the en-
 voys of the English Government. Moolraj appeared
 to acquiesce in the change, and no disturbance was
 expected; but the very day after the English officers' arrival, they were attacked by a party of Moolraj's
 followers, and severely wounded. They retired
 with Sirdar Khan Sing and their escort to the
 Bedgah, a small fort near the town, from which
 an ineffectual fire was directed against them. Three
 days afterwards the Bedgah was attacked. The
 Goorkha soldiers and the Sikhs with them were
 traitors. The gates of the fort were opened to the
 assailants; the two wounded Englishmen were
 cruelly murdered, as, with hand clasped in hand,
 they encouraged each other in their own loved
 tongue; and their bodies were grossly insulted by
 the savage mob.

This act was not a solitary instance of treachery.
 It was discovered that conspiracy was about work

among the Sikhs at Lahore, who in vain attempted to allure the sepoy's stationed there from their allegiance.

CHAP. XXIV.

A. D. 1848.

Intrigues at Lahore.

Lt. Edwardes' energetic proceedings.

As soon as the events at Moultan were known, a force was sent thither under Shere Sing, a Sikh leader, whose faithfulness was considered above question. But there was more effective aid at hand. Mr. Edwardes, a Lieutenant in the Company's army was stationed at Leiah on the Indus, to assist Moolraj in settling that part of his district, and in collecting the revenue. A detachment of faithful Sikhs was under him, with whom he advanced towards Moultan, and he wrote to the Nabob of the neighbouring district of Bhawalpore, requesting immediate assistance. The Nabob responded to the appeal, and, throughout the war, remained a true, faithful, and useful adherent to the English cause.

But before efficient help could reach them, Mr. Edwardes and his party were attacked by an equal number of the insurgents, whom they gallantly repulsed. Hastening forward, he effected a junction with the troops under Colonel Cortlandt, who commanded the fort of Dhera Ismael Khan, and with the forces of the Nabob of Bhawalpore. On the 18th of June, he again defeated Moolraj at Kineyree on the Chenab, after a hard and protracted battle of nine hours' duration. He had crossed that river with his infantry, and had crossed from Colonel Cortlandt, who came up with his regiments and six guns in time to give him most desirable aid. A few days later Moolraj defeated the enemy at Suddoosam.

CHAP. XXIV. fectionally beaten in the open field, Moolraj retired to
 A. D. 1848. Moulton, whither Mr. Edwardes advanced with an
 army which daily increased in number. That
 officer had acted with energy, vigour, and skill.
 He had encouraged those around him to deeds of
 valour; he had stayed the first violence of the
 revolt; and he had thus given others time to plan
 greater things: but he was not able, single handed,
 to crush the power of Moolraj.

Siege of Moul- General Whish, with reinforcements which raised
 tan. the amount of the forces before Moulton to about
 28,000 men, arrived there in August, and assumed
 the chief command.

Insurrection in the Punjab. Meanwhile the Sikhs in the Hazara district arose
 under a leader named Chutter Sing; and a spirit
 of insurrection was generally felt throughout the
 Punjab. The troops before Moulton were, however,
 gaining ground. They had driven the enemy from
 every outwork around the town, which was regular-
 ly invested; but, in the midst of their success, they
 were obliged to raise the siege from an unexpected
 cause. Shere Sing, who was with the besieging
 army, and who had hitherto been implicitly trust-
 ed, went over to the enemy with five hundred Sikhs.

Advance of English troops. The war was henceforward waged on a larger
 scale. An army under Lord Gough, the Comman-
 der-in-chief of India, who had been made a peer
 for his services in the last Punjab war, was assem-
 bled at Ferozepore. It was immediately ordered
 forward to oppose the forces of Shero Sing and
 his father, Chuttur Sing.

On the 21st of November, the English drew near the enemy, who was posted in a strong position at Ramnuggur on the Chenab. Early on the following morning, an attack was made upon the Sikhs by the horse artillery; and the English cavalry were ordered to engage a large body of their horsemen who had crossed the river. The 14th dragoons and a regiment of native cavalry drove the enemy before them; but they charged too far. They were exposed, in the deep sand of the river-bed, to the full fire of the Sikh guns, and were compelled to retire, after suffering severe loss.

CHAP. XXIV.
A. D. 1848.
Engagement
at Ramnuggur.
Nov. 22nd.

The hostile forces did not meet again in battle for some time. In the middle of January, however, Lord Gough resolved to move forward, and to act upon the offensive. He drew near the formidable entrenchments of the Sikhs at the end of a fatiguing march, and he desired to defer the engagement until the following day; but the Sikh batteries were nearer than he supposed, and, as their fire inflicted great loss upon the English army, he issued the necessary orders for battle. The ground, with which the English General was unacquainted, was very unfavourable to the movements of a large army. The English troops were, however, engaged with the enemy; there could be no retreat without dishonour; and they fought nobly, notwithstanding the disadvantages of the ground. Strong batteries were taken at the point of the bayonet; the Sikhs were driven back; and the English army encamped, after the severe contest, near the battle-field—victors indeed, but without the fruits of victory. The enemy

Battle of Chilianwalla.
Jan. 13th, 1849.

CHAP. XXIV. withdrew unpursued; some of the English guns
 A. D. 1849. were taken; and the loss in killed and wounded
 was enormous. But fearful as the English loss
 was, the Sikhs suffered still more than they in the
 battle of Chillianwalla.

Fall of Moul-
 tan.

Jan. 22nd.

The gloom which this indecisive action spread
 over British India soon cleared away. On the 21st
 of January, Moulton fell into the hands of the
 English. General Whish, being reinforced during
 December by troops from Bombay, was enabled to
 renew the siege. On the 31st of that month, a
 sortie of the garrison was repulsed; on the 2nd of
 January, the town was taken by storm; and on
 the 22nd, Moolraj surrendered the citadel. A large
 force was thus released from a long and tedious
 siege, and left free to strengthen the army under
 Lord Gough.

Burial of the
 English envoys.

After the fall of Moulton, the bodies of Messrs.
 Agnew and Anderson were reverently exhumed;
 were borne by their fellow-countrymen through the
 breach which had been made in the battlements;
 and were buried on the ramparts of the fort.
 Moolraj was put upon his trial for their murder,
 and, being found guilty, was sentenced to death, a
 punishment which was afterwards commuted to
 imprisonment for life.

Battle of Guje-
 rat.

Feb. 21st.

When the tidings of the battle of Chillianwalla
 were received in England, they caused a painful sen-
 sation among all classes of the community; and the
 Government thought it advisable to appoint Sir

Charles Napier to command the army in India, and to prosecute the Punjab war; but, long before he arrived in this country, the war had been brought to a favourable conclusion. On the 21st of February, a decisive action took place at Gujerat, where Shero Sing had taken up a strong position with an army of 60,000 men, fifty-nine guns, and a detachment of Affghan cavalry under a son of Dost Mahomed Khan. Gujerat was almost entirely an artillery battle. The English batteries cannonaded the Sikhs for three hours: and, at the end of that time, the British infantry put the whole of the Sikh force to flight, captured all their cannon, and pursued them till darkness fell. The Affghans fled rapidly from the field, and were followed by Sir Walter Gilbert to the entrance of the Khyber Pass.

This victory was conclusive. All the Sikh chieftains of importance surrendered, and the Sikh army was entirely broken up. The conquest of the Punjab was followed by the annexation of that rich and fertile country. It has since been governed well and vigorously; it has improved in every way; and the administration of the English officers is exceedingly popular among the inhabitants.

Conquest and
annexation of
the Punjab.
March 20th.

While Lord Dalhousie was engaged in carrying out the necessary measures for the government of the Punjab, he received tidings of occurrences at Rangoon, which appeared likely to demand a second war with the Burmese. The governor of that town had unjustly oppressed the commanders of two English vessels, and had shewn himself to be generally hos-

Deposited in
the Burmese

CHAP. XXIV. tile to the interests of the English nation at that port.

A. D. 1851. The Governor-General, therefore, considered it expedient to send Commodore Lambert in command of a small fleet to desire satisfaction, and, in the event of the governor refusing to afford any explanation of his conduct, to forward a letter to the King of Ava, demanding his recall. The Governor of Rangoon treated the English Ambassador with marked contempt. The Commodore consequently communicated with the Court of Ava, and the Burmese monarch immediately removed the offending governor, and appointed another officer in his stead.

Beginning of
hostilities. The new governor, however, behaved, if possible, in a more insolent manner than his predecessor. Commodore Lambert, on account of this conduct, declared Rangoon and the adjacent Burmese ports to be in a state of blockade; informed the Burmese monarch that he would hold no further communication with the governor; and seized a large war-boat, which lay near his ship in the Rangoon river, 'by way of reprisal.' On the following morning, he moved his squadron down the river to carry out the proposed blockade, one of his vessels having the captured war-boat in tow: and, as the ships proceeded, the stockades on the banks of the river, and the Burmese war-boats fired at them. The fire was returned with terrible effect, and effectually silenced. The blockade was commenced, and the Commodore returned to Calcutta to receive further instructions from the Governor-General.

War
Burmah. with The King of Ava, upon application being made to him for reparation, refused to afford it, and confirm-

ed the conduct of the Governor of Rangoon; and Lord Dalhousie, who had heartily striven for peace, was obliged to declare war. The favourable season for hostilities had almost passed away, and the rains were near; but the Governor-General hastened the preparations for warfare, with the design of striking a severe and sudden blow at the Burmese power. A large fleet, conveying a considerable force under the command of General Godwin, arrived at the mouth of the Rangoon river in the beginning of April 1852. Mairaban was taken: Rangoon, after a severe struggle, was carried by assault; Bassein, another important position, was captured; and the English forces thus obtained a firm footing in Pegu before the time for active service passed away: but the Burmese monarch was not induced to desire peace, while the invading troops were still far distant from his capital.

Gallant defence of Pegu.

Pegu, the chief town of the province of that name, was taken in the month of June; but, as it was left with only a slender garrison, the Burmese, a few months later, made a desperate effort to retake it. They were defeated, however, by the persevering gallantry of Major Hill of the Madras Fusiliers, and of the few men under his command belonging to the Fusiliers and to the 5th M. N. I., who defended the post committed to their charge against overwhelming numbers, until they were relieved by reinforcements from Rangoon.

Characteristics of the war.

In all the engagements which took place, the Burmese invariably shewed great cruelty to the

CHAP. XXIV. wounded and the captives; but the chief enemy
 A. D. 1852. with which the English had to contend was disease. Cholera and fever were more fatal than the weapons of the Burmese.

Conquest and
 annexation of
 Pegu.

Dec. 20th.

After some delay, General Godwin advanced to Prome, which was placed in the occupation of his troops. The whole of the large country of Pegu was thus in the possession of the English forces, and the Governor-General thought it advisable to keep it under English protection. A proclamation was consequently issued, by which Pegu was pronounced a part of the British Empire, and it is at present steadily recovering, under its new masters, from the effects of Burmese misrule. Meanwhile the King of Ava had been dethroned by his brother, who, convinced that resistance against the superior power of the invaders was in vain, expressed a desire for peace, which was concluded upon his withdrawing his troops from the frontiers of the newly-acquired territories, and releasing the English captives at Ava.

Peace with
 the Burmese.
 June 30th, 1853.

Lord Dalhousie's policy.

Lord Dalhousie's policy in annexing the Punjab and Pegu to the English dominions has been frequently condemned; but we do not think that he could have acted otherwise without neglecting the interests of his country and the safety of India. It was scarcely desirable that the English possessions in the East should have been extended: but, in neither instance, did the enemies of England afford any option to the English Government. In both quarters war had occurred twice, and constant

danger and annoyance might have been expected, if Lord Dalhousie had not made an adequate provision for maintaining the power and honour of the English nation.

During the year succeeding the conclusion of the Burmese war, new territories were added to the Company's dominions. In May 1854, a fresh treaty was entered into with the Nizam, in whose country the contingent force had, for some time past, been irregularly paid. In discharge of the debt which had been incurred, four districts to the north and west of Hyderabad were made over to the management of the English Government. The kingdom of Nagpore, likewise, the Rajah of which had died without issue, was, in the same year, annexed to the Company's territories, and is now governed by English officers.

The time of Lord Dalhousie's stay in India was drawing to a close. One of his last acts as Governor-General was the annexation of Oude. Since the treaty made with the Nabob in 1801, that country had been very badly ruled, and, in 1855, it was confessedly the worst governed native state in India. The Nabob, who was devoted to sensual gratifications, and surrounded by courtiers of the most profligate character, shamefully neglected the affairs of government; the chief posts in the administration were entrusted to worthless favourites; the people were plundered and oppressed; and the ill-disciplined troops supported themselves by rapine, violence, and bloodshed. These evils were aggravated by a religious contest. A party of Mahomedans attacked a

CHAP. XXIV
A. D. 1855.

Treaty of
1854.

Nagpore.

Condition of
Oude.

CHAP. XXIV. pagoda which the Hindus held in peculiar reverence,
 A. D. 1855. and were defeated by the Hindu devotees who assembled for its defence. Enraged at their repulse, they collected in larger numbers, under a fanatical leader named Amcer Ali. It was for some time doubtful what part the Nabob would take in the affair; but he decided upon preventing the outrage which his Mussulman subjects contemplated. The fanatics were attacked by the king's troops under English officers; they were defeated and their leader slain.

Annexation of
 Oude.
 Feb. 9th.

Such a lamentable state of affairs in a dependent kingdom could not be permitted to continue; and the Court of Directors allowed Lord Dalhousie to decide whether Oude should remain in its former position, or be taken under the immediate protection of the English Government. The Governor-General resolved upon adopting the latter course. The Nabob was invited to conclude a friendly treaty, whereby the government of the kingdom which he had shown himself incapable of ruling should, like that of Mysore, be placed in the hands of the English, while ample provision should be made for the support of his own position and dignity. These terms were rejected: and Lord Dalhousie proceeded to issue a proclamation, by which Oude was declared a portion of the English possessions. The English, it was stated, had agreed, by the treaty of 1801, to protect the Nabob of Oude against every foreign and domestic enemy, while that sovereign, on his part, bound himself to establish such a system of administration, to be

carried into effect by his own officers, as should be conducive to the prosperity of his subjects, and calculated to secure the lives and property of the inhabitants." The English had fulfilled their part of the engagements; the Nabob had neglected his: and, therefore, the country which he had misgoverned was taken out of his possession. The system pursued in the Punjab was introduced into Oude. English officers were appointed to the administration of the government, General, afterwards Sir James, Outram, being the first Chief Commissioner: and the new territory passed into the possession of the East India Company without any immediate disturbance or expression of ill-will on the part of the people, for whose benefit the change was made.

CHAP. XXIV.
A. D. 1856.

The prolonged administration of Lord Dalhousie ceased on the 29th of February 1856, upon which day Lord Canning, who had been appointed his successor, assumed charge of the Indian Government. Lord Dalhousie's rule was distinguished by various social improvements, which, we confidently believe, will contribute greatly to the welfare of the inhabitants of India. Sound and practical education was encouraged; schemes for the instruction of the people were planned, and officers appointed to carry these schemes into effect; works for the irrigation of land and the promotion of traffic were multiplied; railroads constructed; and the three principal cities of India connected by electric telegraph.

Departure of
Lord Dalhousie.

Social im-
provements.

CHAP. XXIV. Changes were also made in the constitution of
A.D. 1856. the East India Company. In 1853 the Company's
Changes in the Company's Charter. Charter was renewed with various alterations, the
principal of which were a reduction in the number
of the Directors, some of whom were in future to
be appointed by the Crown; the formation of a
Legislative Council for all India; and the free
admission of candidates who passed the requisite
examinations to the medical and civil services.

CHAPTER XXV.

MUTINY OF THE BENGAL ARMY.

FROM A. D. 1857 TO A. D. 1858.

Disaffection in the north-west—Mutiny at Berham-pore—Revolt at Meerut and Delhi—Defence of the magazine—March to Delhi—Defence of Lucknow—Defence of Cawnpore—Massacre of Cawnpore—Advance of Col. Neill—Havelock's march to Cawnpore—Further victories—Relief of Lucknow—Storm of Delhi—Fate of the king and his sons—Second relief of Lucknow—Rescue of the women and children—Defeat of the Gwalior Contingent—Final capture of Lucknow—Campaign in Rohil-cund—Central India Force—Return of peace—Abolition of the East India Company's political power—The Queen's Proclamation—Close of the mutiny—Growth of English power—Benefits of English rule.

THE year 1857 was the saddest in the history of British India. A strong feeling of discontent against English rule had for some time been gaining ground in the north-west, and had more or less spread to other parts of India. The refusal to permit the adopted sons of Hindu Rajahs to succeed to their dominions, now happily withdrawn, the recent annexation of Oude, and a false rumour which had spread far and wide that the English

CHAP. XXV. Government intended to deprive Hindus of their caste and to compel both them and the Mahomedans to become Christians, had created uneasiness in the minds of the people, which the designing and disaffected sought by every method to increase. No thoughtful man who in the slightest degree understood the character of the English nation or the spirit of the Christian religion, could have been misled for a moment; for the English people are of all nations peculiarly open, and detest any thing approaching treachery and deceit; and Christianity is a religion of reason, kindness, and love, and forcible conversion is contrary to its very nature; but it suited the purpose of those who intended to rebel to misrepresent the measures of the English Government to those who could not understand them. The readiest tools for these intriguers were the sepoys of the Bengal army, most of whom were of high caste and recruited from the province of Oude. A new drill had lately been introduced for the purpose of instructing the sepoys in the use of the rifle, and a report was circulated that the cartridges to be used had been greased with the fat of oxen and of swine, in order to injure the caste of the Hindus and the feelings of the Mahomedans. The story was believed. Disaffection rapidly spread among the sepoys of the Bengal army, who were well aware of the paucity of English troops in India, and who fully imagined that they were all-powerful and could carry everything before them. The whole army from the Punjab to Calcutta were ripe for revolt.

Mysterious rumours spread through the North-West Provinces. Chupattis were sent from village to village to warn the inhabitants that some great event was impending, which must have been circulated by those who had tampered with the fidelity of the sepoys, and had been preparing the way for rebellion. The first open exhibition of mutiny occurred at Berhampore near Calcutta, where the 19th Native Infantry refused to take the cartridges which had been served out to them; and a few weeks afterwards they were marched down to Barrackpore and disbanded. A few days later, a more open instance of mutiny took place at Barrackpore; and the greater part of another regiment was also disbanded, the discharged men carrying with them to other places the embers of discontent and rebellion.

CHAP. XXV

A. D. 1857

Mutiny
Berhampore.

Feb. 26th.

The smouldering fire, however, burst into a blaze in an entirely different quarter. Some men of the 3rd Light Cavalry at Meerut had been sentenced to imprisonment for refusing to receive the new cartridges; and had been marched off on the morning of the 9th of May to undergo their punishment. On the following evening, all the sepoys in the place rose in revolt. They shot their officers, murdered all the English residents whom they could discover at a distance from the English troops, and marched off to Delhi under cover of the darkness of the night.

Outbreak
Meerut.

May 10th.

At Delhi their comrades joined them in the work of treacherous destruction. False to the salt they had eaten, false to the officers whom

Revolt
Delhi.

May 11th.

CHAP. XXV. they had hitherto followed with devotion, false
 A. D. 1857. even to themselves, the misguided sepoys not only
 rose against their officers, but murdered in cold
 blood unoffending women, innocent children, and
 men who could not have injured them in any way.
 The King of Delhi, who had for many years resided
 in luxury and ease within his palace, sanctioned
 the massacre of several English people with his
 presence and approval.

Defence of the magazine. The magazine of Delhi fell into the hands of the
 mutineers, but not without a struggle and a bril-
 liant instance of unselfish heroism. Lieutenant
 Willoughby and eight others defended it for
 some time against innumerable odds; and then,
 rather than let it fall untouched into the hands
 of their enemies, fired a train which exploded the
 powder. The man who had fired it was no more
 seen, and Lieutenant Willoughby reached Meerut
 only to die. For many months Delhi was the
 centre of the rebellion, and revolted regiments
 hastened thither to fight under the flag of the
 Emperor against their former masters.

March of Eng- When these events took place, General Anson;
 lish troops to the Commander-in-chief, was at Simla. He at once
 Delhi. hastened to Umballa, whither English troops were
 moving, but in a few days was carried off by dis-
 ease at Karnaul, and Sir Henry Barnard assumed
 command of the army, which had begun its march
 to Delhi. They were joined on the way by troops
 from Meerut under General Wilson, who had twice
 defeated the enemy during his advance; once on

the Hindun, where the road from Meerut to Delhi crosses the river, and again on the following day. The united divisions soon advanced; and, after a sharp action at Badlie Serai, where the advanced post of the sepoy army had been stationed, reached the heights before Delhi, to which, though far inferior in numbers to the enemy, they clung, amidst sickness, failing numbers, and constant sallies from the town, until their efforts were ultimately crowned with success.

CHAP. XXV.

A. D. 1857.

The progress of the mutiny was rapid. Every station where Bengal regiments were posted, became, more or less, a scene of anarchy and confusion. At most places the officers were thoroughly taken by surprise. They could not believe that men who had hitherto obeyed, followed, and apparently respected them, could turn against them with such treachery and ingratitude. In many places, even where there were English troops, no preparations were made; but happily this was not the case everywhere. At Lucknow, the capital of the province of Oude, Sir Henry Lawrence, who had lately been sent there as Chief Commissioner, with wise promptitude and foresight, laid in provisions for a siege; and, while he exerted himself to the utmost to maintain order, to cheer the faithful, and to overawe the rebellious, quietly prepared for the worst. His conciliatory measures seemed at first successful; but at length they entirely failed. The native regiments at Lucknow followed the example of their brethren elsewhere, and broke into rebellion. Sir Henry L.

Defence of
Lucknow.
July 1st to
Sept. 25th.

IIAP. XXV. deceived by report as to the number of the insur-
 A. D. 1857. gents. at hand, went out to meet them in battle;
 June 30th. but his small force was overwhelmed by ever
 increasing numbers at Chinhut, a few miles from
 Lucknow, and he retreated to the Residency,
 where, in the heart of the city, surrounded by
 thousands not only of trained sepoy, but of the
 people of the country, a small garrison consist-
 ing of part of the Queen's 32nd Regiment, of a few
 faithful sepoy, the bravest of the brave, and of
 civilian volunteers, kept guard over their dear
 ones during several weeks of unintermitting
 assault. Sir Henry Lawrence, their good, wise,
 unselfish leader, was killed a few days after the
 commencement of the siege by the bursting of a
 shell, and he died entreating his comrades with
 his last breath never to yield. They did *not* yield:
 and few in any country in the world have fought
 more bravely.

Defence of Darker scenes occurred at Cawnpore. When the
 Cawnpore. sepoy there rebelled, the few English soldiers,
 June 6th to about 250 in number, with the women and children,
 h. collected for defence in a frail entrenchment, where
 they kept the enemy at bay for three weeks. The
 mutinous sepoy were under the command of
 Dundhu Punt, usually known as Nana Sahib, the
 adopted son of Baji Row, the former Peishwa of
 the Mahrattas. He resided at Bithur, a few miles
 from Cawnpore, and had always appeared to be
 most friendly towards his English neighbours, but
 in his heart he hated them. The Government had
 lately refused to accede to his request that he

might be permitted to receive his adoptive father's munificent allowance, and, on his appeal to England, the Court of Directors confirmed their decision. He was allowed to inherit the Peishwa's private property and the jagheer of Bithur, but not his personal pension. Stung to the quick at this refusal, he cherished the hope of future revenge. The time had now arrived. For some time he deceived Sir Hugh Wheeler, the General commanding at Cawnpore, with promises of assistance; but, when the revolt occurred, he persuaded the sepoy, who were marching off to Delhi, to return and attack the entrenchment.

CHAP XXV:
A. D. 1857.

At length, after deeds of unparalleled courage and heroic endurance, Sir Hugh Wheeler accepted an offer made by Nana Sahib of a safe conduct to Allahabad on condition of his surrendering the entrenchment with all its stores and ammunition. The latter faithfully promised to fulfil his part of the engagement, but deliberately broke his word. The garrison were on the point of embarking on board the boat prepared for them, when a fire of musketry was opened on them, and the men, including the sick and wounded, were put to death, except two or three who contrived almost by a miracle to escape. The women and children were kept in close confinement until July the 15th, when they were cruelly murdered by order of Nana Sahib in vexation at his defeat by General Havelock, just as their fellow-countrymen were hastening to their rescue.

Massacre of
Cawnpore.
June 27th.

July 15th.

CHAP. XXV. Retribution was at hand. Help was coming
 A. D. 1857. from Madras; from Persia, where an English army
 Advance of Colonel Neill. had lately been engaged in warfare, and had been
 set free by the proclamation of peace; from China, whither troops were being sent to punish insults to the English flag; from the Cape, and from the Mauritius. The first officer who succeeded in stemming the tide of rebellion was Colonel Neill with the 1st Madras Fusiliers. On landing at Calcutta, he hastened to Benares and Allahabad, where he soon restored order and confidence by the presence of his soldiers.

Havelock's
 march to Cawn-
 pore.

At Allahabad he was joined by General Henry Havelock. Major Renaud had just advanced with eight hundred Fusiliers and Sikhs on the road to Futtehpore. General Havelock soon followed. At Futtehpore he gained his first victory. Though fatigued by a long march, a few soldiers of the four regiments which followed General Havelock throughout his campaign, the 1st Madras Fusiliers, the 78th Highlanders, and the 64th and 84th Infantry, put three thousand mutineers to flight in a few hours. Two days later they fought two battles in one day, and won them both. Forward they pressed to Cawnpore, whence Nana Sahib came out to meet them; and was beaten back by an army five times smaller than his own. He did not stay at Cawnpore, but fled to his stronghold at Bithur: and, the following morning, Havelock's soldiers, stern and resolute, marched in to see the traces of the foul deed which they were just too late to prevent.

In a few days, General Havelock had crossed the Ganges into Oude, intent on relieving the garrison of Lucknow. He had meanwhile taken quiet possession of Bithur, which had been abandoned by Nana Sahib, whose palace was burnt. General Neill was left behind to restore order at Cawnpore. Thrice General Havelock advanced, and thrice he retreated to Cawnpore, after numerous victories, but beaten by disease in his ranks, which proved a more formidable foe than mutinous sepoy. Ready to fight anything, he was obliged to await reinforcements at Cawnpore.

He had not very long to wait. By the middle of September, Sir James Outram had joined him with fresh troops, and, with characteristic generosity and kindness, permitted him to retain command of the army that he might succeed in the object which he had had so long at heart. The thrice illustrious garrison of Lucknow had kept off the enemy with superlative bravery; at last, on the 25th of September, they were cheered by the approach of General Havelock and his dauntless heroes, who had fought their way from Cawnpore, into the Alum-Bagh, the fortified summer-palace of the Kings of Oude, in the environs of the city; through the streets of Lucknow, where every house had been turned into a loop-holed fortress; and into the Residency, where they were greeted with cheers, and thanks, and tears of joy by those whom they had rescued. Just as the Residency was reached, General Neill was struck down, while stooping to

CHAP. XXV.

A. D. 1857.

Further vic-
torious.Relief of Luck-
now.

Sept. 25th.

CHAP. XXV. give a refreshing draught to a wearied soldier. Sir A. D. 1857. James Outram assumed command after the relief of Lucknow. He had much to do. The garrison had been rescued, but could not be removed, so, with increased numbers and with stronger hope, the defence of the Residency was continued until further help should come.

Storm of
Delhi.
Sept. 14th to
20th.

Meanwhile Delhi had fallen. When Sir John Lawrence, Chief Commissioner of the Punjab, heard of the mutiny at Delhi and Meerut, he took every precaution to ensure the peace and safety of the Punjab. The mutinous regiments there were disarmed; the Sikhs were invited to join the English standard; and every available man, whether Englishman or Sikh, was sent at once to Delhi. Gradually the courageous little army which had so long held the heights before the city was enlarged, and General Archdale Wilson, who had succeeded to the command, prepared for the final assault. The real siege commenced on the 7th of September; on the 14th the city was stormed; and, after hard fighting day by day, the whole was taken on the 20th. It was no light struggle. The mutinous sepoys were congregated there in numbers far exceeding their assailants; but they were beaten on their own chosen ground, "before a single soldier of the many thousands who were hastening from England to uphold the supremacy of British power had set foot on the shores of India."

The King of Delhi had fled, but was taken captive by Captain Hodson, the bold leader of the Punjab Horse; and, on the following morning, the same officer captured two sons and a grandson of the king. As he drew near the city gate on his return, he found his small escort surrounded by a large crowd intent on rescuing them. Dashing into the crowd, he exclaimed, "These are the men who ordered and witnessed the massacre and exposure of innocent women and children!" Then turning quickly round, he shot them dead with his pistol. "Well done," cried the crowd, and at once dispersed. After a long, impartial, and careful trial, the king was found guilty of murder, and banished for the remainder of his life to Rangoon.

CHAP. XXV.

A. D. 1857.

Fate of the King and his sons.

Every day soldiers were arriving from the Colonies or England. Sir Colin Campbell, a tried and wary veteran, had started at a day's notice from England to take command of the armies in India. In November he had reached Cawnpore, and had crossed the Ganges to relieve Lucknow. He advanced in a different way to that which General Havelock had taken. One after another, the Dilkosha, the Martiniere College, the Secunder-Bagh, were taken by the fiery impetuosity of the Highlanders and Sikhs, and a way was cut through 50,000 foes to the Residency. Foremost among the brave were Captain Peel and his sailors, who had come from the frigate *Shannon* at Calcutta with some huge guns which they handled like toys.

Second relief of Lucknow.
Nov. 17th.

CHAP. XXV. Sir Colin Campbell's one object was to save

A. D. 1857 the women and children. A false attack was kept

Rescue of wo- up from the Residency ; and then, while the
men and child- enemy's attention was diverted, they were remov-
ren. ed along the winding streets and lanes of the
city, guarded right and left by English soldiers,
until, not one wanting, they reached comparative
safety at the Dilkoosha. Leaving a small but
strong garrison at the Alum-Bagh under Sir James
Outram, to show that he was about to return,
Sir Colin Campbell marched back with his convoy
to Cawnpore.

Defeat of the
Gwalior Con-
tingent.

Dec. 6th:

He had not returned a moment too soon. The
Gwalior Contingent, which had mutinied in June,
but had hitherto been kept back at Gwalior by the
strenuous efforts of the faithful Maharajah Scindia
and his Dewan, Dinkur Row, had attacked the
force there; had driven back the troops; and
had threatened to re-capture the place. Directly
Sir Colin Campbell had sent his charges off to
Calcutta, he turned his attention to the enemy,
and by his skilful generalship soon put him to
flight.

Final cap-
ture of Luck-
now.

Mar. 21st, 1858.

The Commander-in-chief remained some time at
Cawnpore, collecting troops and preparing to
inflict a crushing blow at Bareilly and Lucknow,
while his lieutenants in several places were gain-
ing victories over the enemy, and Jung Bahadur,
the Prime Minister of Nepaul, was advancing with
a Ghoorkha army to co-operate with him. Sir James
Outram, now deprived of the help of his colleague
Sir Henry Havelock, who had died of exhaustion

soon after the relief of Lucknow, made repeated sorties at the Alum-Bagh against his assailants, and fully held his own. At length all was ready, and on the 28th of February, Sir Colin crossed the Ganges for his final advance into Oude. On the 21st of March the capital was finally captured. CHAP. XXV.
A. D. 1853.

After their defeat in Oude, the majority of the fugitive rebels retreated into Rohileund, where a Mussulman named Khan Bahadur Khan, an old man who had been in receipt of a pension from the English Government, had for some months been ruler. During his short-lived reign, the Hindus were ill-treated and oppressed, and they experienced a taste of what they would have been compelled to endure if Rohileund had remained under Mahomedan rule. Nana Sahib, the Begum of Oude, and Feroze Shah, the principal leaders of the rebels, had fled to Bareilly; and thither Sir Colin Campbell advanced from Cawnpore, whither he had returned from a visit to the Governor-General at Allahabad. Three divisions had preceded him under Generals Jones, Seaton, and Walpole. The latter received a severe check at a strong fort called Rodamow, which was retrieved in the following week by signal victory; and Sir Colin Campbell's force joining him in a few days, the several divisions closed in on Bareilly. The insurgent leaders fled on the capture of Bareilly; and the Moulavi of Faizabad, the only one who had shown any military skill, took refuge at Mohamdee, a fort on the frontier of Oude, the taking of which completed the conquest of Rohileund. Campaign in
Rohileund.

CHAP. XXV. While Sir Colin Campbell, who was soon afterwards created a peer under the title of Lord Clyde, and his army were battling in the north, three columns advanced from Bombay and Madras through Central India and Rajpootana. The most brilliant and important campaign was that of the Central India Force under Sir Hugh Rose. This compact little army had marched from the Western Coast to the banks of the Jumna through mountain passes and intricate jungles, had captured the strongest forts, and beaten the enemy wherever he had been met without a repulse or check. Advancing from Indore, Sir Hugh Rose had relieved the garrison of Saugor; had defeated Tantia Topee, a kinsman of the Nana, on the banks of the Betwa; had captured the rocky fortress of Jhansi, where the Ranee herself had fought like a man; had gained a victory at Koonch over both Tantia Topee and the Ranee; and had taken the stronghold of Calpee. On his defeat at Calpee, Tantia Topee went to Gwalior, the capital of the Maharajah Scindia, who, still faithful to his allies, fled from his own rebellious troops to Agra. He did not remain a fugitive long. Sir Hugh Rose at once marched to Gwalior, which he captured after a sharp struggle, and in twenty days the Maharajah was restored. The Ranee of Jhansi was slain in battle before Gwalior, and Tantia Topee, who had fled with a remnant of his followers, was caught after several months' wandering.

Return of Peace. Peace and tranquillity now reappeared. Every effort was made to restore order and to infuse

confidence in the provinces which had been the scene of war. Victory had everywhere crowned the English arms; and Lord Canning, who had always remained calm and courageous during the darkest days of danger, exerted himself to the utmost in offering clemency and mercy to the conquered. Rewards were liberally bestowed on all those who had shown kindness to English fugitives in the time of trouble, and who had remained faithful among the faithless, while those only who had been guilty of murder were punished. The most conspicuous of the rebel leaders were either taken captive and executed, or perished in exile. Nana Sahib, the most cruel of all, died a fugitive in Nepaul.

The principal change which resulted from the mutiny was the abolition of the East India Company's political power. After much discussion in Parliament, it was determined that the sovereign of England should become in name, as well as in reality, the sole ruler of India. All authority was taken from the Court of Directors; the Board of Control was abolished; and the chief power was placed in the hands of a Secretary of State for India, assisted by a Council consisting of fifteen men experienced in Indian affairs.

On the 1st of November 1858, a proclamation was publicly read at all the principal stations in India, announcing that Her Most Gracious Majesty Queen Victoria had assumed the direct rule of her Indian dominions. This proclamation, which

CHAP. XXV.

A. D. 1858.

Abolition of
the East India
Company's po-
litical power.

AP. XXV. has well been called the Magna Charta of India,
 .D. 1833. concludes with these words:—"It is our earnest
 desire to stimulate the peaceful industry of India,
 to promote works of utility and improvement,
 and to administer its government for the benefit
 of all our subjects resident therein. In their
 prosperity will be our strength, in their content-
 ment our security, and in their gratitude our best
 reward. And may the God of all power grant
 unto us and to those in authority under us,
 strength to carry out these our wishes for the
 good of our people."

With the Queen's words we close this brief
 account of the mutiny in Bengal. For the good of
 the people of India themselves, which we can
 fearlessly assert is the chief object the English
 rulers of India desire to attain, we rejoice that
 the efforts of the rebellious sepoys were not suc-
 cessful. With everything in their favour at the
 outset, they were conquered in almost every con-
 test by numbers far inferior to their own, but
 superior in discipline and skill: we fully believe,
 however, that the victory was not gained by the
 unassisted might or by the unaided skill of the
 victors, but by the all-powerful help of the Lord
 God of Hosts, who can save by many or by few.

We have thus related the progress of the Eng-
 lish Empire in India, from its first struggles for
 existence under Clive and Lawrence, to the present
 time when it extends from Peshawur to Pegu.
 We have seen it steadily increasing from year to
 year, until, for wise and good purposes, it has been
 permitted by the Supreme Ruler, who orders every

event in history and in life, to reach its present gigantic limits. This permission has undoubtedly been granted for the benefit of India; and although a great deal still remains to be done for that object, very much has been effected.

It has been remarked that if the English were to quit India to-morrow there would be no memorial or vestige left of their sojourn in the land. But so it would not be. There have been imprinted broad, deep marks of good, which can never be effaced. Doubtless there are defects in what Englishmen have done for India; but of necessity there are such in all human institutions, and ever will be to the end. For a hundred years, there was rarely any bloodshed in the Company's transactions; and the dominion of the English has been peculiarly distinguished for its gentleness, mildness, and moderation. Englishmen are in the chief places of power, and they are for the most part, true and trusty men, who bear themselves nobly in the discharge of duty. Justice is done, all, except when kept back by the craft of their own countrymen; suttee, infanticide, and human sacrifices are almost entirely abolished; and, for above all, the good seed of our glorious Faith has been sown, and it will never cease to bud and blossom so long as India has a connection with the nations of the earth.

CHAP. XXV.
A. D. 1858.

Benefits of
English rule.

INDEX.

	Page.
Abercromby's, General, operations on the Western Coast, 130;	
co-operates with Lord Cornwallis	131
Abington, Major, repulses Hyder's troops on the Western Coast...	116
Act, the Regulating	93
Affghanistan, Embassy to, 228; revolutions in, 228; British inva-	
sion of, 230; the British forces in, 231; disasters in, 233, 234;	
advance of General Pollock into, 238; of General Nott, 238;	
conclusion of the war in	239
Affghans, war with the, 230 seq.; assist the Sikhs	236
Africa, discoveries in	35
Agnew, Mr., assassination of, at Moultan, 262; burial of	263
Agra, Shah Jehan is dethroned at, 27; the capture of 165; Lord	
Lake's army re-assembles at	152
Ahmedabad taken by Colonel Goddard	195
Ahmednuggur taken by General Wellesley	143
Ajmir, the Rajah of, attacks Mahmud	15
Akber, birth of, 22; his accession to the throne, 23; his long	
and noble reign, 24, 33; disapproval of his wife's character	
to Nur Jehan, 25; East India Company founded in the reign of	
Akber Khan, son of Dost Mahomed, negotiation with, 235; con-	
ference of Sir W. Macnaghten with, 235; is present at Sir W.	
Macnaghten's murder, 235; renewed negotiation with, 236;	
his consummate treachery, 236; the capture of the English	
prisoners in Cabul, 236; is defeated before Kandahar	27
Albuquerque Alphonso, the Portuguese, 22; Portuguese	
conquests under	22
Alexander the Great invades India	22
Alighur captured by General Lake	22
Aliverdy Khan, Nabob of Bengal	22
Aliwal, the battle of	22
Allahabad, capture of, 85; British forces in, 101; Appa Sahu	
of Oude, 101; Appa Sahu	101
Lord Canning at	101
Almora, the capture of	101

	<i>Page</i>
Alumbagh, capture of, 283; held by Sir J. Outram, ...	286, 287
Amar Sing, the Goorkha chief, 181; retreats to Malouan, 182; desperate attack of, 183; retires to Catmandoo ...	18
Amber, gallant defence of, 94; battle near, 95; taken by Hyder ...	11
Amboyna, massacre of ...	4
Ameer Ali, a fanatical leader in Oude, ...	27
Ameer Khan falls upon a detachment of reposs, 157; his foray during the siege of Bhurtpore, 163; is defeated by the cavalry, 164; invades Benar, and is opposed by the English ...	17
Amers, the, of Seinde, 240; their ill-will to the English, 241; break treaties, and create disturbances, 241; sign a fresh treaty, 242; attack the British Commissioner, 242; are defeated at Meeranee, 243; and at Hyderabad, 244; their final subjugation ...	24
America, discovery of ...	30
Amherst, Lord, becomes Governor-General, 213; engages in war with the Burmese, 213; his proceedings with regard to Bhurtpore ...	224
Amyatt, Mr., murder of ...	86
Andaman Islands, rendezvous of the Burmese expedition at ...	218
Anderson, Mr., assassination of, 262; burial of ...	266
Annexation, the, of Seinde, 245; of the Panjab, 267; of Nagpore, 271; of Pegu, 269; of Oude ...	272
Anson, Genl., death of ...	278
Anwar-ud-dien becomes Nabob of the Carnatic, 48; his death ...	48
Appa Sahib is made Regent at Nagpore, 195; enters into alliance with the English, 195; ascends the throne, 196; his intrigues and plots, 196; attacks the English at Nagpore, 197; negotiations with, 198; surrenders, 199; is reinstated as Rajah, 200; renews his intrigues, 209; is placed under restraint, 210; is sent to Allahabad, 210; his escape and flight, 210, 211; takes refuge in Aseerghur, 201, 211; flies to the Panjab, 211; his final refuge at Joudpore ...	211
Arabs, contest with, at Nagpore, 199; at Correguam ...	205
Archipelago, Indian, The, Dutch commerce in ...	39
Arcot is taken by Clive, 51; gallant defence of, 50, 51; is taken by Hyder, 109; cavalry from, charge into Vellore ...	170
Argaum, the battle of ...	153
Armogum, English build a factory near ...	42
Arnee, Clive defeats Rajah Sahib at ...	52

	Page.
Airacan, disputes on the frontiers of, 214; operations in, 218;	
subjugation of, 221; is ceded to the English	223
Asseerghur, Appa Sahib takes refuge in, 201, 211; siege of	210
Ashtee, cavalry action at	207
Asoca, King of Magada	9
Asoph-ud-Dowlah becomes Nabob of Oude, 101; his death	136
Assam taken by the Burmese, 214; ceded to the English	223
Assaye, the battle of	149
Auckland, Lord, becomes Governor-General, 226; sends an em-	
bassy to Dost Mahomed, 228; engages in the Afghan war,	
230; retires	236
Aurangzib, his character, 26; rebels against his father, 26; his	
dissimulation, 26; proclaims himself Emperor, 27; defeats	
Dara, 27; and Shuja, 28; his wars with the Mahatras, 30, 31;	
his zeal for Mahomedanism, 31; his death	31
Ava, the English advance to, 222, 223; conclusion of peace near,	
223; king of, dethroned	270
Azeem-ul-Dowla made Nabob of the Carnatic	141
Baber, invades India, 18; gains the battle of Panipat, 15; his	
biographical memoir, 19; defeats the Rajputs, 20; his death,	
20; Vasco de Gama visits India during the reign of	27
Bactria, the kingdom of	12
Badlic Serai, battle at	270
Bahar under the government of Aliverdy Khan, 57; invaded by	
Meer Jaffier, 65; is invaded by Shah Alom, 66; passes into	
the hands of the English	67
Bahoor, French defeated at	57
Baillie, Colonel, sent to Guntoor, 108; is defeated by Tippoo	108
Baird, General, leads the assault on Seringapatam	197
Baji Row.—See Peishwa.	
Baji Row made the Rajah of Nagapoor	200
Bala Hissar, at Cabul, English in the	200
Bandoola, the Burmese General, 213; his operations in	
218; advance to Rangoon, 219; is defeated, 219; his	
death during the defence of Dacca	219
Bangalore, the capture of, 125; British troops	
camped at	125
Bappoo Setowlea, conduct of, in the Carnatic	222

	Page.
Alumbagh, capture of, 283; held by Sir J. Outram, ...	286, 287
Amar Sing, the Goorkha chief, 181; retreats to Maloun, 182; ...	
desperate attack of, 183; retires to Catmandoo ...	184
Ambcor, gallant defence of, 94; battle near, 95; taken by ...	
Hyder	111
Amboyna, massacre of	40
Ameer Ali, a fanatical leader in Oude,	272
Ameer Khan falls upon a detachment of sepoy, 157; his foray ...	
during the siege of Bhurtpore, 163; is defeated by the cavalry, ...	
164; invades Berar, and is opposed by the English ...	173
Amäers, the, of Scinde, 240; their ill-will to the English, 241; ...	
break treaties, and create disturbances, 241; sign a fresh ...	
treaty, 242; attack the British Commissioner, 242; are defeated ...	
at Mecanee, 243; and at Hyderabad, 244; their final subjugation ...	245
America, discovery of	36
Amherst, Lord, becomes Governor-General, 213; engages in war ...	
with the Burmese, 215; his proceedings with regard to Bhurtpore ...	224
Amyatt, Mr., murder of	83
Andaman Islands, rendezvous of the Burmese expedition at ...	215
Anderson, Mr., assassination of, 262; burial of	266
Annexation, the, of Scinde, 245; of the Punjab, 267; of Nagpore, ...	
271; of Pegu, 269; of Oude	272
Anson, Genl., death of	278
Anwar-ud-dien becomes Nabob of the Carnatic, 48; his death ...	48
Appa Sahib is made Regent at Nagpore, 195; enters into alli- ...	
ance with the English, 195; ascends the throne, 196; his ...	
intrigues and plots, 196; attacks the English at Nagpore, 197; ...	
negotiations with, 198; surrenders, 199; is reinstated as ...	
Rajah, 200; renews his intrigues, 209; is placed under ...	
restraint, 210; is sent to Allahabad, 210; his escape and flight, ...	
210, 211; takes refuge in Aseerghur, 204, 211; flees to the ...	
Punjab, 211; his final refuge at Joudpore	211
Arabs, contest with, at Nagpore, 199; at Corregaum	205
Archipelago, Indian, The, Dutch commerce in	39
Arcot is taken by Clive, 51; gallant defence of, 50, 51; is taken ...	
by Hyder, 109; cavalry from, charge into Vellore	170
Argaum, the battle of	153
Armogum, English build a factory near	42
Arnee, Clive defeats Rajah Sahib at	52

Arracan, disputes on the frontiers of, 214; operations in, 218;	
subjugation of, 221; is ceded to the English	222
Asseorghur, Appa Sahib takes refuge in, 204, 211; siege of	210
Assteo, cavalry action at	297
Asoca, King of Magada	2
Asoph-ud-Dowlah becomes Nabob of Oude, 101; his death	136
Assam taken by the Burmese, 214; ceded to the English	223
Assaye, the battle of	149
Auckland, Lord, becomes Governor-General, 228; sends an em-	
bassy to Dost Mahomed, 228; engages in the Affghan war,	
230; retires	236
Aurangzib, his character, 26; rebels against his father, 26; his	
dissimulation, 26; procinims himself Emperor, 27; defeats	
Dara, 27; and Shuja, 28; his wars with the Mahrattas, 30, 31;	
his zeal for Mahomedanism, 31; his death	31
Ava, the English advance to, 222, 223; conclusion of peace near,	
223; King of, dethroned	270
Azeem-ul-Dowla made Nabob of the Carnatic	144
Baber, invades India, 18; gains the battle of Paniput, 18; his	
biographical memoir, 19; defeats the Rajputs, 20; his death,	
20; Vasco de Gama visits India during the reign of	37
Bactria, the kingdom of	13
Badlie Serai, battle at	270
Bahar under the government of Aliverdy Khan, 57; given to	
Meer Jaffier, 65; is invaded by Shah Alam, 75; passes into	
the hands of the English	87.
Bahoer, French defeated at	54
Baillie, Colonel, sent to Guntoor, 108; returns to join Sir Hector	
Munro, 108; is defeated by Tippoo	103
Baird, General, leads the assault on Seringapatam	140
Baji Row.—See Peishwa.	
Baji Row made the Rajah of Nagapore	211
Bala-Hissar, at Cabul, English in the	234
Bandoola, the Burmese General, 218; his operations in Arracan,	
218; advance to Rangoon, 219; is defeated, 219, 220; his	
death during the defence of Donabew	221
Bangalore, the capture of, 129; Lord Cornwallis's army en-	
camped at	130
Bappoo Setowlea, conduct of, in the Gwalior war	218